



lincolnowner.com



lincolncanada.com



Preproduction model shown



August 2014
Second Printing
Owner's Manual
Lincoln MKC
Litho in U.S.A.

FJ7J 19A321 AB



2015 MKC Owner's Manual

2015 MKC



Preproduction model shown

Owner's Manual



THE LINCOLN MOTOR COMPANY

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2014

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 20140808194212

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Manual.....	7
Symbols Glossary.....	7
Data Recording.....	9
California Proposition 65.....	11
Perchlorate.....	12
Lincoln Automotive Financial Services.....	12
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	12
Special Notices.....	13
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	13
Export Unique Options.....	14

At a Glance

At a Glance.....	15
------------------	----

Child Safety

General Information.....	23
Installing Child Seats.....	25
Booster Seats.....	31
Child Seat Positioning.....	33
Child Safety Locks.....	35

Safety Belts

Principle of Operation.....	37
Fastening the Safety Belts.....	38
Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	41
Safety Belt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....	42
Safety Belt Minder.....	43
Child Restraint and Safety Belt Maintenance.....	44

Personal Safety System™

Personal Safety System™.....	46
------------------------------	----

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation.....	47
Driver and Passenger Airbags.....	48
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	49
Side Airbags.....	52
Driver Knee Airbag.....	53
Safety Canopy™.....	53
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	55
Airbag Disposal.....	56

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies.....	57
Remote Control.....	58
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	61

MyKey™

Principle of Operation.....	62
Creating a MyKey.....	63
Clearing All MyKeys.....	63
Checking MyKey System Status.....	65
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	66

Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	67
Manual Liftgate.....	72
Power Liftgate.....	73
Keyless Entry.....	76

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System.....	79
--------------------------------	----

Table of Contents

Anti-Theft Alarm.....	80
-----------------------	----

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	81
Audio Control.....	82
Voice Control.....	83
Cruise Control.....	83
Information Display Control.....	83
Heated Steering Wheel.....	84

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....	85
Autowipers.....	86
Windshield Washers.....	87
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	87

Lighting

Lighting Control.....	89
Autolamps.....	90
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	91
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	91
Daytime Running Lamps.....	91
Automatic High Beam Control.....	92

Direction Indicators.....	93
Welcome Lighting.....	94
Interior Lamps.....	94
Ambient Lighting.....	95

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	96
Global Opening and Closing.....	97
Exterior Mirrors.....	98
Interior Mirror.....	100
Sun Visors.....	101
Moonroof.....	101

Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	104
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	106
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	110

Information Displays

General Information.....	111
Information Messages.....	117

Climate Control

Automatic Climate Control.....	135
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....	137
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	138
Cabin Air Filter.....	139
Remote Start.....	139

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	141
Head Restraints.....	141
Power Seats.....	144
Memory Function.....	145
Rear Seats.....	146
Heated Seats.....	147
Climate Controlled Seats.....	148
Rear Seat Armrest.....	149

Universal Garage Door Opener

Universal Garage Door Opener.....	150
-----------------------------------	-----

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points.....	155
-----------------------------	-----

Table of Contents

Storage Compartments

Center Console.....	157
Overhead Console.....	157
Ticket Holders.....	157

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	158
Keyless Starting.....	158
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	159
Engine Block Heater.....	161

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....	163
Fuel Quality.....	164
Running Out of Fuel.....	164
Refueling.....	166
Fuel Consumption.....	167
Emission Control System.....	168

Transmission

Automatic Transmission.....	171
-----------------------------	-----

All-Wheel Drive

Using All-Wheel Drive.....	177
----------------------------	-----

Brakes

General Information.....	182
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	182
Electric Parking Brake.....	183
Hill Start Assist.....	185

Traction Control

Principle of Operation.....	187
Using Traction Control.....	187

Stability Control

Principle of Operation.....	189
Using Stability Control.....	190

Parking Aids

Parking Aid.....	191
Active Park Assist.....	193
Rear View Camera.....	199

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation.....	203
Using Cruise Control.....	203
Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	204

Driving Aids

Driver Alert.....	212
Lane Keeping System.....	213
Blind Spot Information System.....	218
Steering.....	223
Collision Warning System.....	224
Drive Control.....	227

Load Carrying

Rear Under Floor Storage.....	229
Luggage Covers.....	229
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	229
Load Limit.....	230

Towing

Towing a Trailer.....	239
Trailer Sway Control.....	239
Recommended Towing Weights.....	240

Table of Contents

Essential Towing Checks.....	241
Transporting the Vehicle.....	243
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	244

Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....	246
Economical Driving.....	246
Driving Through Water.....	247
Floor Mats.....	247

Roadside Emergencies

Roadside Assistance.....	249
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	250
Fuel Shutoff.....	250
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	251
Post-Crash Alert System.....	253

Customer Assistance

Getting the Services You Need.....	255
In California (U.S. Only).....	256
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....	257

Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only).....	258
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....	258
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....	260
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....	260
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....	261

Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart.....	262
Changing a Fuse.....	278

Maintenance

General Information.....	279
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	279
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	281
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost™.....	283
Engine Oil Dipstick.....	284
Engine Oil Check.....	284
Oil Change Indicator Reset.....	285

Engine Coolant Check.....	285
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....	289
Brake Fluid Check.....	289
Power Steering Fluid Check.....	289
Washer Fluid Check.....	289
Fuel Filter.....	289
Changing the 12V Battery.....	290
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	292
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	292
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	293
Removing a Headlamp.....	294
Changing a Bulb.....	294
Bulb Specification Chart.....	296
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	298

Vehicle Care

General Information.....	300
Cleaning Products.....	300
Cleaning the Exterior.....	300
Waxing.....	301
Cleaning the Engine.....	302
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....	302

Table of Contents

Cleaning the Interior.....	302
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....	305
Cleaning Leather Seats.....	306
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	306
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	306
Vehicle Storage.....	307

Wheels and Tires

General Information.....	310
Tire Care.....	312
Using Snow Chains.....	325
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	326
Changing a Road Wheel.....	330
Technical Specifications.....	336

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications.....	338
Motorcraft Parts.....	339
Vehicle Identification Number.....	341
Vehicle Certification Label.....	341
Transmission Code Designation.....	342
Technical Specifications.....	343

Audio System

General Information.....	347
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/ FM/CD.....	348
Media Hub.....	350

MyLincoln Touch™

General Information.....	352
Settings.....	365
Entertainment.....	378
Phone.....	398
Information.....	405
Climate.....	416
Navigation.....	420

Accessories

Accessories.....	430
------------------	-----

Appendices

End User License Agreement.....	432
---------------------------------	-----

Extended Service Plan (ESP)

Extended Service Plan (ESP).....	458
----------------------------------	-----

Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information.....	461
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....	465
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....	469
Scheduled Maintenance Record.....	473

Introduction

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Lincoln. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

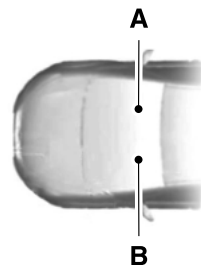
Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to your vehicle.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side

B Left-hand side




























Protecting the Environment

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

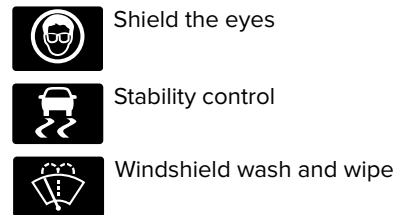
SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Introduction

	Safety alert		Cabin air filter		Engine coolant temperature
	See Owner's Manual		Check fuel cap		Engine oil
	Air conditioning system		Child safety door lock or unlock		Explosive gas
	Anti-lock braking system		Child seat lower anchor		Fan warning
	Avoid smoking, flames or sparks		Child seat tether anchor		Fasten safety belt
	Battery		Cruise control		Front airbag
	Battery acid		Do not open when hot		Front fog lamps
	Brake fluid - non petroleum based		Engine air filter		Fuel pump reset
	Brake system		Engine coolant		Fuse compartment

Introduction



DATA RECORDING

Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle.

Introduction

Additionally, when your vehicle is in for service or repair, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them data for vehicle improvement purposes. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See **MyLincoln Touch™** (page 352).

Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was traveling; and
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or

Introduction

where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

Note: *Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See MyLincoln Touch™ (page 352).*

Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See MyLincoln Touch™ (page 352).

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

WARNING



Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Introduction

PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, safety belt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. For more information visit:

Web Address
www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

LINCOLN AUTOMOTIVE FINANCIAL SERVICES

Lincoln Automotive Financial Services offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Lincoln Automotive Financial Services, thank you for your business.

For your convenience we offer a number of ways to contact us, as well as help manage your account.

Phone: 1-888-498-8801

For more information regarding Lincoln Automotive Financial Services, as well as access Account Manager, please go to www.LincolnAFS.com.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Introduction

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

SPECIAL NOTICES

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the Warranty Manual that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

WARNINGS



Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury. See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 47).



Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles

WARNING



Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Guide carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow

Do not use this vehicle for snowplowing.

Your vehicle is not equipped with a snowplowing package.

Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance

Do not use this vehicle as an ambulance.

Your vehicle is not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Introduction

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

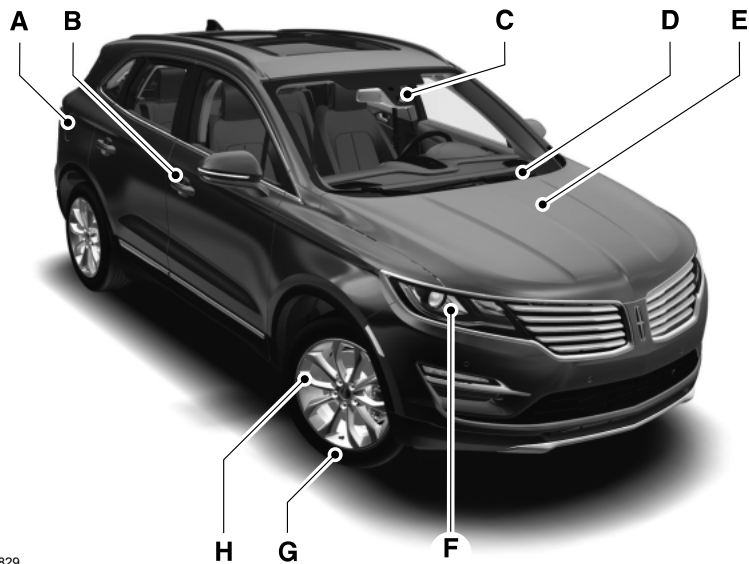
This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle.

At a Glance

Front Exterior Overview



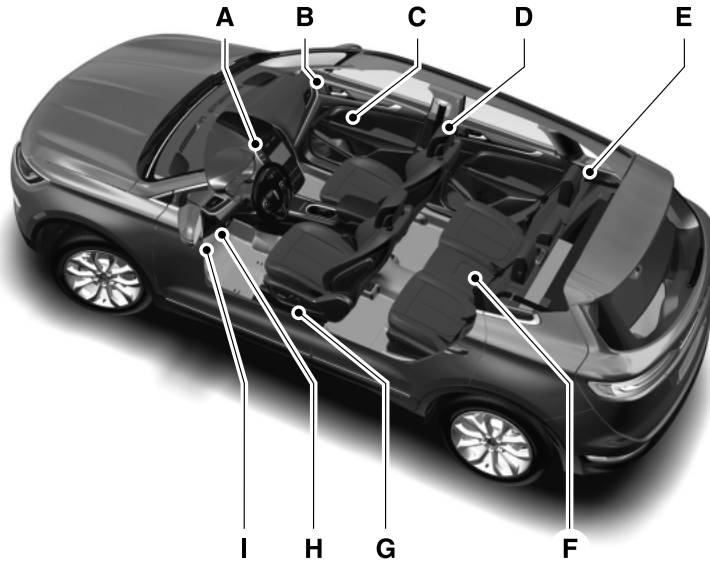
E184829

At a Glance

- A See **Refueling** (page 166).
- B See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 67).
- C See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 92).
- D See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 292).
- E See **Maintenance** (page 279).
- F See **Changing a Bulb** (page 294).
- G Tire pressures. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 310).
- H See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 330).

At a Glance

Vehicle Interior Overview



E173613

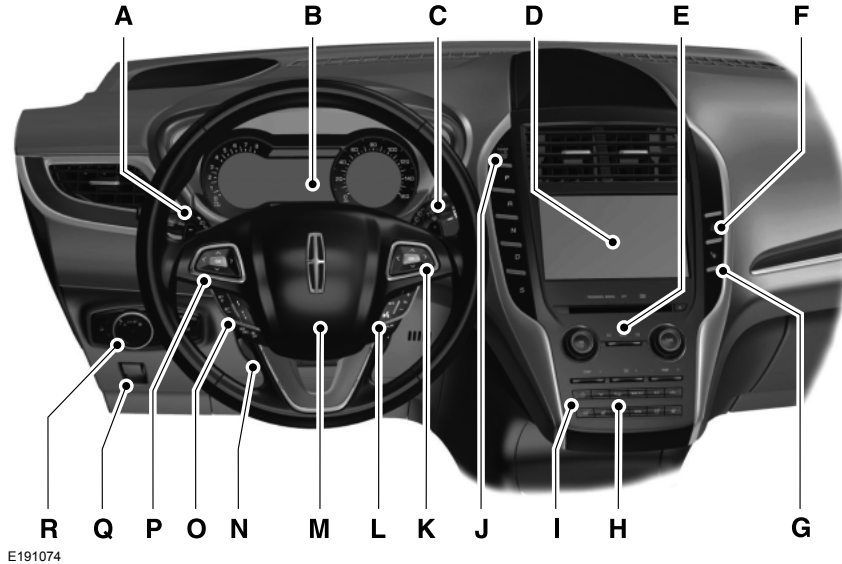
- A See **Transmission** (page 171).
- B See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 67).

At a Glance

- C See **Power Windows** (page 96).
- D See **Head Restraints** (page 141).
- E See **Fastening the Safety Belts** (page 38).
- F See **Rear Seats** (page 146).
- G See **Power Seats** (page 144).
- H See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 183).
- I See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 279).

At a Glance

Instrument Panel Overview



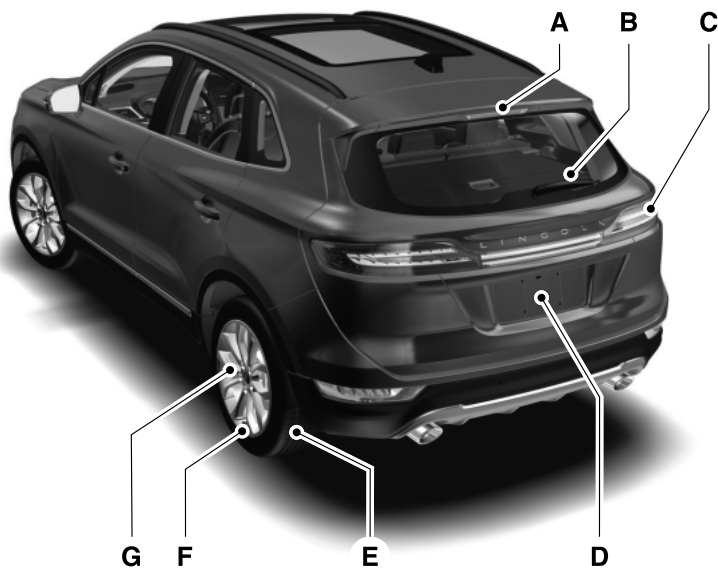
- A Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 93). High beam. See **Lighting Control** (page 89).
- B Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 104). See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 106).

At a Glance

- C Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 85).
- D Information and entertainment display.
- E Audio unit.
- F Hazard warning flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 250).
- G Parking aid switch. See **Parking Aids** (page 191).
- H Heated rear window switch. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 138).
- I Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 135).
- J Start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 158).
- K Entertainment, navigation and phone.
- L Voice control. See **Voice Control** (page 83).
- M Horn.
- N Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 81).
- O Cruise control switches. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 203).
- P Information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 111).
- Q Parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 183).
- R Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 89). Instrument lighting dimmer. See **Instrument Lighting Dimmer** (page 91).

At a Glance

Rear Exterior Overview



E173614

- A See **Changing a Bulb** (page 294).
- B See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 292).

At a Glance

- C See **Changing a Bulb** (page 294).
- D Liftgate. See **Manual Liftgate** (page 72). See **Power Liftgate** (page 73).
- E See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 330).
- F Tire pressures. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 310).
- G See **Tire Care** (page 312).

Child Safety

GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

WARNINGS



Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNINGS



All children are shaped differently. The recommendations for safety restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in your vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST, contact the NHTSA toll

WARNINGS

free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, locate your local St. John Ambulance office by searching for St. John Ambulance on the internet, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Child Safety

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat back upright.

Child Safety

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position. See **Front Passenger Sensing System** (page 49).

INSTALLING CHILD SEATS

Child Seats





E142594


Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 pounds (18 kilograms) or less (generally age four or younger).

Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

WARNINGS

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.

 Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

Child Safety

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place the vehicle seat upon which the child seat will be installed in the upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

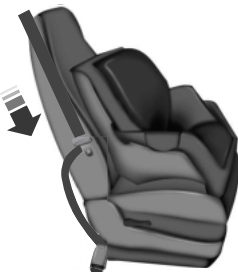
Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

Note: *Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.*



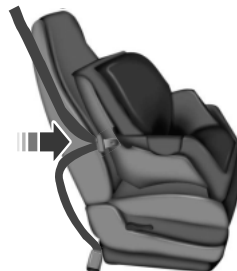
E142528

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



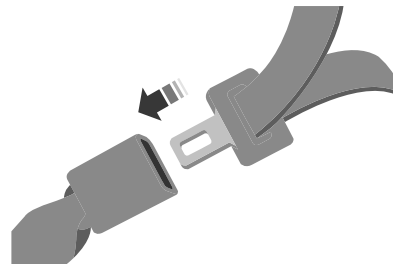
E142529

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



E142531

Child Safety

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.

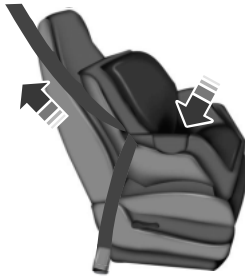


E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

Note: *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.

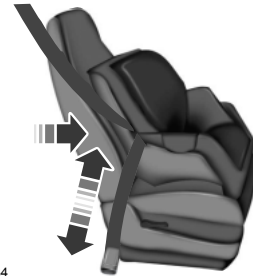


E142533

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack

that will exist once the extra weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.

9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped).



E142534

Child Safety

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) of movement for proper installation.

Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a Certified Passenger Seat Technician.

Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

WARNINGS



Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

WARNINGS



Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors located where the seatback and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to

attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat.

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation. The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seatback. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments. Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors.

Child Safety

Use of Inboard Lower Anchors from the Outboard Seating Positions (Center Seating Use)

WARNING



The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 inches (28 centimeters) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 inches (46 centimeters) apart. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

Combining Safety Belt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Seats

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat.

Using Tether Straps



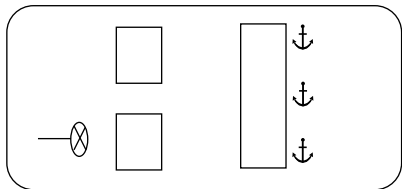
Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats.

Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once the child safety seat has been installed using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

Child Safety

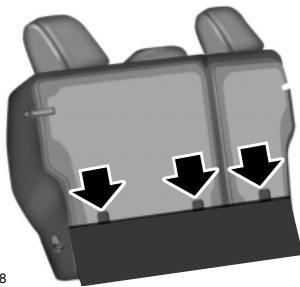


E142537

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

Note: *If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat. For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating positions, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. If needed, the head restraints can also be removed.



E142538

2. Locate the correct anchor on the back panel of the rear seat for the selected seating position. The anchors are labeled with the tether strap symbol and are partially covered by the gap panel. Pull the panel back to fully expose the anchors.




E142539

3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

Child Safety

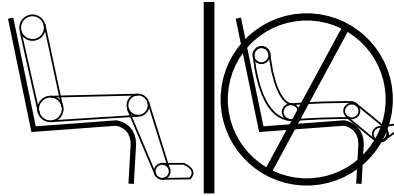
BOOSTER SEATS

WARNING

 Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 pounds (18 kilograms) and 80 pounds (36 kilograms) and upward to 100 pounds (45 kilograms) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



E142595

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

Types of Booster Seats



E68924

- Backless booster seats

Child Safety

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



E70710

- High back booster seats

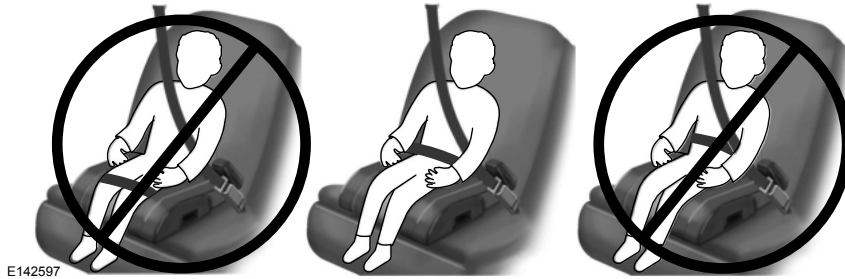
If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



E142596


Child Safety




If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

WARNINGS


 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.


WARNINGS

 Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.


Child Safety

WARNINGS


 Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash, which may result in serious injury or death.


 Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a crash.

WARNINGS

 Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

WARNINGS

 Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

 To avoid risk of injury, do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Child Safety

Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children

Restraint Type	Combined weight of child and child seat	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29 kg)		X			X
Rear facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29 kg)					X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29 kg)			X	X	

Note: *The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Seats** (page 141).*

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.

Child Safety



E112197

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.


Right-Hand Side


Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.


Safety Belts


PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS


 Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.


 To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.


 Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash.


 All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

WARNINGS


 It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.


 In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.

 Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

 When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

WARNINGS

 Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

 Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder safety belts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The safety belt system consists of:

- lap and shoulder safety belts
- shoulder safety belt with automatic locking mode, (except driver safety belt)
- height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions

Safety Belts

- retractor and anchor pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions
- belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position



- safety belt warning light and chime

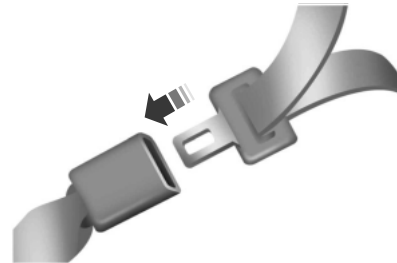


- crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The safety belt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers. The safety belt pretensioners on the retractor and anchor at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body when activated. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal crashes, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

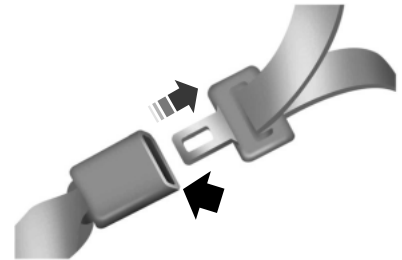
FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.



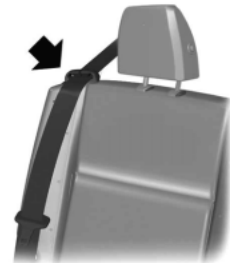
E142587

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



E142588

2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.




E142589

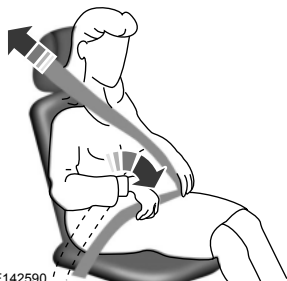
When in use, the rear safety belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.

Safety Belts

Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy

WARNING

 Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See the following figure.





E142590

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Safety Belt Locking Modes

WARNINGS

 After any vehicle crash, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the automatic locking retractor feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.

 **BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED** if the safety belt assembly automatic locking retractor feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in crashes.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt has the first type of locking mode, and the front outboard passenger and rear seat safety belts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

Safety Belts

Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

This mode should be used any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. See **Child Safety** (page 23).

How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode



E142591

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and turn on the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

How to Extract Safety Belts in the Rear Outboard Positions

Safety belts in the rear outboard positions can lock if the seatback is returned firmly to its upright position. You can unlock the safety belts using the following procedures.

For vehicles where the rear seats recline:

1. Recline the seat to its full rear recline position.
2. The safety belt should then unlock.
3. Return the seatback to its desired upright position.


For vehicles with rear seats that do not recline or are locked with the seat in its full rear recline position:

Safety Belts

1. Grasp the safety belt webbing at the top of the seatback.
2. Pull the safety belt webbing forward, firmly.
3. After pulling the safety belt forward, allow the safety belt to feed back into the safety belt retractor as much as possible. If necessary, press the seatback down to allow the safety belt webbing to retract further.
4. The safety belt should then unlock.
5. If the safety belt does not unlock, repeat steps 1-3.

Safety Belt Extension Assembly

WARNING


 Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

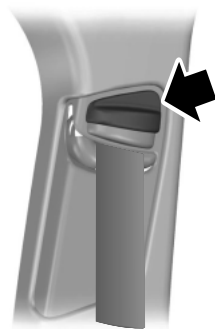
If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, you can obtain a safety belt extension assembly from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is on a label located either at the end of the webbing or on the retractor behind the trim. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING

 Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt correctly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E87511

To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

Safety Belts

SAFETY BELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME



This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's safety belt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

Safety Belts

SAFETY BELT MINDER

Belt-Minder™

This feature supplements the safety belt warning function by providing additional reminders that intermittently sound a tone and illuminate the safety belt warning light when you are in the driver seat or you have a front seat passenger and a safety belt is

unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder feature for objects you place in the front passenger seat, only the front seat passengers receive warnings as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings expire (warnings for about five minutes) for one passenger (driver or front passenger), the other passenger can still cause the Belt-Minder feature to turn on.

If...	Then...
You and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts before you switch the ignition on or less than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.
You or the front seat passenger do not buckle your safety belts before your vehicle reaches at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the safety belt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts.
The safety belt for the driver or front passenger is unbuckled for about 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the safety belt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts.

Safety Belts

Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature

WARNING



While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

Note: *The driver and front passenger warnings switch on and off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.*

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
- The transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

- The ignition is off.
 - The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled.
1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the vehicle.
 2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (about one minute). After Step 2, wait an additional 5 seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 30 seconds.
 3. For the seating position you are switching off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the safety belt warning light turns on.
 4. While the safety belt warning light is on, buckle and then unbuckle the safety belt. After Step 4, the safety belt warning light flashes for confirmation.
- This will switch the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.
 - This will switch the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

CHILD RESTRAINT AND SAFETY BELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

Safety Belts

Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for safety belts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 300).

Personal Safety System™

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

The Vehicle Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outboard safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicator lamp.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.

- Restraint system warning light and backup tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.


How Does the Personal Safety System Work?


The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of the safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the safety belt pretensioners, one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.


Supplementary Restraints System


PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS


 Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.


 All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.


 Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.


 Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

WARNINGS

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

 Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation as this may result in serious injury.

 If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the safety belts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

Supplementary Restraints System

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

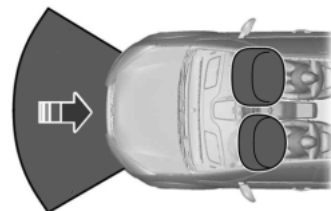
WARNINGS



Never place your arm or any objects over an airbag module. Placing your arm over a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries. Objects placed on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.



E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.




• Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 55).

Supplementary Restraints System

Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

WARNING

 National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 centimeters) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:


- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase

the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

Children and Airbags

WARNING

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.





E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WARNINGS

 Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

Supplementary Restraints System

WARNINGS



Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system which could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF ON

E177067

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag status indicator that will illuminate indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either ON (enabled) or OFF (disabled).

The indicator lamp is located in the center stack of the instrument panel.

Note: *The passenger airbag status indicator OFF and ON indicator lamps will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is first turned on to confirm it is functional.*

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. Even with this technology, parents are **strongly** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag and seat-mounted side airbag when the passenger seat is empty.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate the OFF lamp and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
 - If the child restraint has been installed and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the ON lamp, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.
- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate the ON lamp and remain illuminated.

Supplementary Restraints System

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat back in the full upright position.

- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.

- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator OFF lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Passenger airbag status indicator	Passenger airbag
Empty	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Child	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Adult	OFF: Unlit	Enabled
	ON: Lit	

Note: When the passenger airbag status indicator OFF light is illuminated, the passenger (seat mounted) side airbag may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended

Supplementary Restraints System

on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 55).

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center. See **Getting the Services You Need** (page 255).

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNINGS



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.



Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.



Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

WARNINGS



If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The side airbags are located on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain sideways crashes, the airbag on the side affected by the crash will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.

Supplementary Restraints System



E152533

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags located inside the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- Front passenger sensing system.



• Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

See **Crash Sensors and Airbag**

Indicator (page 55).

Note: *The passenger sensing system will deactivate the passenger seat-mounted side airbag if it detects an empty passenger seat.*

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

A driver's knee airbag is located under the instrument panel. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver's knee airbag based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver's knee airbag may deploy but the driver's front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbag is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator**

(page 55).

SAFETY CANOPY™

WARNINGS



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.




Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the curtain airbags, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing curtain airbags as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.




All occupants of your vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag supplemental restraint system and curtain airbag is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

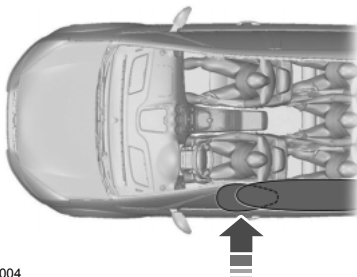
Supplementary Restraints System

WARNINGS

 To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the curtain airbag.

 If the curtain airbags have deployed, the curtain airbags will not function again. The curtain airbags (including the A, B and C pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the curtain airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The Safety Canopy will deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



E75004

The system consists of the following:

- Safety canopy curtain airbags located above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment



- The crash sensors and monitoring system have a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 55).

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

Supplementary Restraints System

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

WARNING



Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module which deploys (activates) the front safety belt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, seat mounted side airbags, and the Safety Canopy. Based on the type of accident (frontal impact, side impact or rollover) the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. A warning indicator light in the instrument cluster indicates the readiness of the safety system. If this warning indicator light is not functioning and there is another fault within the system, the message cluster may display an airbag failure warning. See **Information Displays** (page 111). You will hear five tones that repeat periodically until you repair the problem, the warning indicator light or both. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.
- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The safety belt pretensioners and the airbag supplemental restraint system is designed to activate when your vehicle sustains frontal or sideways deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor.

Supplementary Restraints System

The fact that the safety belt pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (for example, crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The design of the safety belt pretensioners is to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers.
- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side impact crashes. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if your vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.

- The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if your vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

Keys and Remote Controls

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term **IC** before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range. One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around the vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle

Other short-distance radio transmitters, such as amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems may operate on the same frequency as your remote control. If other transmitters are operating on those frequencies, you may not be able to use your remote control. Using your remote control near some types of electronic equipment, such as USB devices, computers or cell phones can interfere with remote operation. Operating your remote control near metal or metallic-finished purses, bags or clothing can interfere with remote operation. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Intelligent Access

The system uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to unlock when one of the following conditions are met:

- You touch the inside of the front exterior door handle.
- You press the luggage compartment button.
- You press a button on the transmitter.

If excessive radio frequency interference is present in the area or if the transmitter battery is low, you may need to mechanically unlock your door. You can use the mechanical key blade in your intelligent access key to open the driver door in this situation. See **Remote Control** (page 58).

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL

Intelligent Access Key



E144506

Your intelligent access keys to operate the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.

Removable Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable mechanical key blade that you can use to unlock the driver door.



E176224

Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off to access the key blade.



E151795

Note: Your vehicle's backup keys come with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.

Replacing the Battery

Note: Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Replacing the battery will not delete the transmitter from the vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

A message will appear in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **General Information** (page 111).

Intelligent Access Transmitter

The remote control uses two coin-type three-volt lithium batteries CR2025 or equivalent.

Keys and Remote Controls



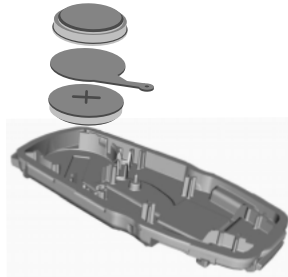
E176225

1. Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off.



E153890

2. Insert a coin into the slot and twist to separate the housing.



E176226

3. Remove the batteries.
4. Install new batteries with the + facing each other.

Note: Make sure to replace the label between the two batteries.

5. Reinstall the housing and cover.

Car Finder



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn will sound and the turn signals will flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

Sounding a Panic Alarm

Note: The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is off.



Press the button to activate the alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to deactivate.

Remote Start

WARNING



To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or areas that are not well ventilated.

Note: Do not use remote start if your vehicle is low on fuel.



The remote start button is on the transmitter.

This feature allows you to start your vehicle from outside the vehicle. The transmitter has an extended operating range.

Keys and Remote Controls

Vehicles with automatic climate control can be configured to operate when the vehicle is remote started. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 135). A manual climate control system will run at the setting it was set to when you switched the vehicle off.

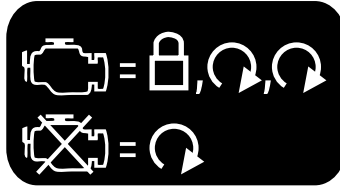
Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

The remote start system will not work if:

- The ignition is on.
- The alarm system is triggered.
- You disable the feature.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in **P**.
- The vehicle battery voltage is too low.
- The service engine soon light is on.

Remote Starting the Vehicle

Note: *You must press each button within three seconds of each other. Your vehicle will not remote start if you do not follow this sequence.*



E138626

The tag with your transmitter details the starting procedure.

To remote start your vehicle:

1. Press the lock button.
2. Press the remote start button twice. The exterior lamps will flash twice.

The horn will sound if the system fails to start. See **General Information** (page 111).

The power windows will not work during the remote start and the radio will not turn on automatically.

The parking lamps will remain on and the vehicle will run for 5, 10, or 15 minutes, depending on the setting.

Extending the Vehicle Run Time

Repeat Steps 1 and 2 with the vehicle still running to extend the run time for another remote start duration. If you programmed the duration to last 10 minutes, the second 10 minutes will begin after what is left of the first activation time. For example, if the vehicle had been running from the first remote start for five minutes, the vehicle will continue to run now for a total of 15 minutes. You can extend the remote start up to a maximum of 35 minutes.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after a vehicle shutdown.

Turning the Vehicle Off After Remote Starting



Press the button once. The parking lamps will turn off.

Keys and Remote Controls

You may have to be closer to the vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of the running vehicle.

You can disable or enable the remote start system through the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

Remote Control Feedback

An LED on the remote control provides status feedback of remote start or stop commands.

LED	Status
Solid green	Remote start or extension successful
Solid red	Remote stop successful; engine off
Blinking red	Remote start or stop failed
Blinking green	Waiting for status update

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 79).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that remain unprogrammed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. They can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have created a MyKey, you can access the following information by using the information display to determine:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle traveled with a MyKey.

Note: Switch the vehicle on to use the system.

Note: All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.

Note: For vehicles equipped with push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin remote transmitter are present, the admin remote transmitter will be recognized by the vehicle while switching the vehicle on to start the vehicle.

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Safety belt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat passengers' safety belts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel or charge. The low-fuel or low charge warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel or recharge.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: parking aid and Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) with cross traffic alert.
- Satellite radio adult content restrictions, if equipped on your vehicle.

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to switch off Advance Trac or traction control, 911 Assist or Emergency Assist, or the do not disturb feature (if your vehicle is equipped with these features).

CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the intelligent access key fob into the backup slot. The location of your backup slot is in another chapter. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 158).
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu on the information display controls, and select **Settings** then **MyKey** by pressing **OK** or the > button.
4. Press **OK** or the > button to select **Create MyKey**.
5. When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.
2. Access the main menu on the information display controls, and select **Settings**, then **MyKey** by pressing **OK** or > button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to get to a feature.
4. Press **OK** or > to make a selection.

Note: *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 111).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the OK button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the OK button until the following message displays.
All MyKeys Cleared	

Note: *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.*

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 111).

To find information on a programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Description
Settings	Press the OK button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Select one of the following:	
MyKey Dist.	Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKey. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.
{0} MyKeys	Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.
{0} Admin Keys	Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

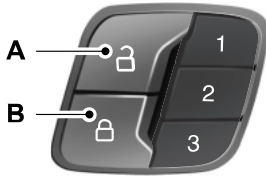
Locks

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E138628

- A Unlock
- B Lock

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on each door window trim lights when you lock the door. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock and interior luggage compartment release switch will no longer operate after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control or keyless keypad, or switch the ignition on, to restore function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time. The luggage compartment release button only works when your vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)



E176107

Press the button to unlock the driver door.
Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking. Disabling two-stage unlocking allows all vehicle doors to unlock with one press of the button. The direction indicators will flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control, keyless entry keypad and intelligent access.

Locks

Intelligent access at the driver door will unlock all doors when you disable two-stage unlocking.

Locking the Doors



E176108

Press the button to lock all the doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors lock again, the horn sounds and the direction indicators flash if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

Mislock

The horn sounds twice and the lamps will not flash if:

- Locking is not successful.
- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

Power Liftgate (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Make sure all persons are clear of the liftgate area before using the liftgate control.



Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*



Press twice within three seconds to open, close or stop the movement of a power liftgate. See **Power Liftgate** (page 73).

Mechanical Key

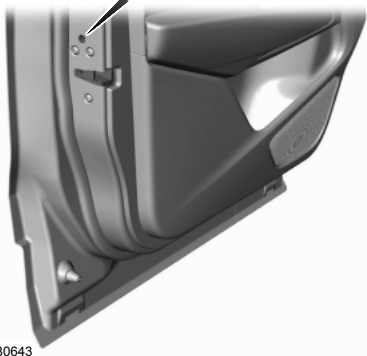
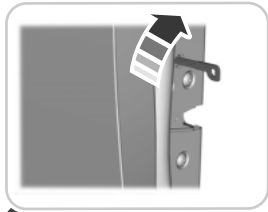
Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle once to lock all doors.

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle once to unlock the driver door only. See **Remote Control** (page 58).

Locking the Doors Individually

If the power locks fail to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

Locks



E180643

Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Opening a Rear Door from Inside

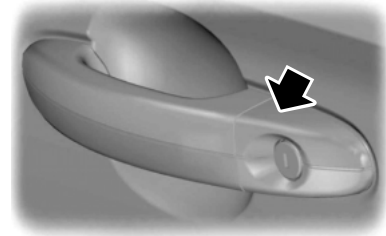
Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull will unlatch the door.

Activating Intelligent Access

The intelligent access key must be within 3 feet (1 meter) of your vehicle.

At the Front Doors

Pull a front exterior door handle to unlock and open the door. The unlock sensor is on the back of the handle. Make sure not to touch the lock sensor area on the front of the handle.



E146044

Press and hold the lock sensor area for about a second to lock your vehicle. To avoid unlocking the door inadvertently, make sure you only touch the lock sensor and not other areas of the door handle.

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure it locked.

Note: *Keep the door handle surface clean to avoid issues with operation.*

At the Liftgate

Press the exterior liftgate release button inside the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

Locks

Smart Unlocks

This feature helps to prevent you from unintentionally locking your intelligent access key inside the passenger compartment or rear cargo area.

When you lock your vehicle using the power door lock (with the door open, vehicle in park and ignition off), your vehicle will search for an intelligent access key in the passenger compartment after you close the door. If your vehicle finds a key, all of the doors will immediately unlock.

You can override the smart unlock feature and intentionally lock the intelligent access key inside your vehicle. To do this, lock your vehicle after you have closed all the doors by:

- Using the keyless entry keypad.
- Pressing the lock button on another intelligent access key.
- Touching the locking area on the handle with another intelligent access key in your hand.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle using the power door lock, all doors will lock.

Autolock Feature

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- You shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion.
- Your vehicle attains a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).

The autolock feature repeats when both of the following occur:

- You open then close any door while the ignition is on and your vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower.
- Your vehicle then attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

Autounlock Feature

The autounlock feature unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed, and your vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to accessory.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

Note: *The doors will not autounlock if you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off and before you open the driver door.*

Enabling or Disabling

Note: *You can enable or disable the autounlock and autolock features independently of each other.*

You can enable or disable these features in the information display or your authorized dealer can do it for you. See **General Information** (page 111).

Locks

Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps will light when you unlock the doors with the remote control.

The system turns off the lights if:

- You start your vehicle.
- You press the remote control lock button.
- They are on for 25 seconds.

The lights will not turn off if:

- You switch them on with the lamp control.
- Any door is open.

Illuminated Exit

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps will light when all doors are closed and you switch the ignition off.

The lamps turn off if all the doors remain closed and either of the following occurs:

- After 25 seconds elapse.
- You lock your vehicle from the outside.

Battery Saver

If you leave the courtesy lamps or dome lamps on and switch the ignition off, this feature turns them off after some time.

Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys

If you leave your vehicle with the ignition on, it will turn off 15 minutes after you close all of the doors.

Welcome Lighting

This feature lights select exterior lighting as you approach your vehicle. You must have an intelligent access key with you. The feature turns off when you open a door, liftgate, or unlock your vehicle. Welcome lighting remains on for 25 seconds or until you start your vehicle.

The feature is active when:

- The feature is configured on in the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).
- The ignition is off.

- All doors and the liftgate are closed.
- You lock your vehicle.

The feature is not active when:


- Your vehicle detects the intelligent access key is inside.
- The intelligent access key is in close range of the vehicle for more than two minutes.
- The anti-theft alarm triggers.
- You do not start your vehicle for more than five days.
- The vehicle battery charge is low.


Note: *When you disable this feature, you must switch the ignition on to reset it.*

Locks

MANUAL LIFTGATE

WARNINGS

 It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

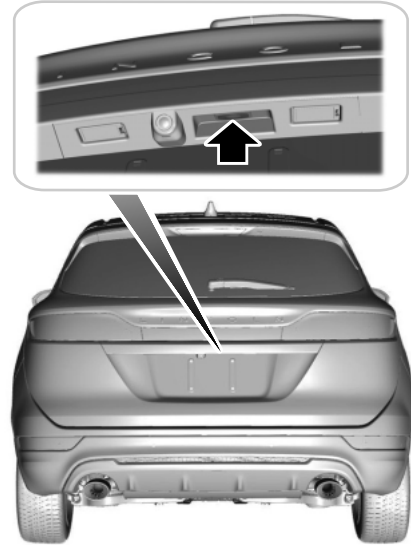
Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Opening the Liftgate

Manually



E180684

Locks

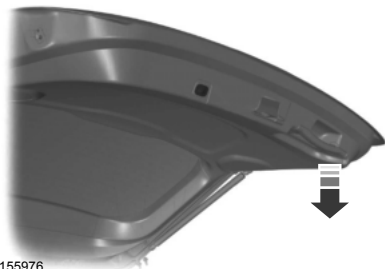
Press the button to unlatch the liftgate. Once unlatched, pull on the outside handle to open the liftgate.

With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds. Pull on the outside handle to open.

Closing the Liftgate





E155976


A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

POWER LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

 It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

 Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

 Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to play near an open or moving power liftgate.

Note: *Cycling the ignition while the liftgate is power closing and is near the latch may cause the liftgate to reverse to the full open position. Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving the vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. You could damage the liftgate or its components.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the spoiler, glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

The liftgate only operates with the transmission in park (P).

Three warning tones sound as the liftgate begins to power close. Five short tones indicate a problem with the open or close request, such as:

- The ignition is on and the transmission is not in park (P).
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- The vehicle speed is at or above 3 mph (5 km/h).

Locks

If the liftgate falls after the liftgate has stopped in the open position, you may hear four short warning tones. This indicates excessive weight on the gate or a possible gas strut failure. Have an authorized dealer check the system if you still have the issue after you remove the load.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate

WARNING



Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: You can stop the liftgate movement direction with a second press of the instrument panel button or the button on the liftgate trim, a second double press of the transmitter button, or by using a kicking motion with your foot for a hands-free liftgate (if equipped).

From the Instrument Panel



Press the instrument panel button.

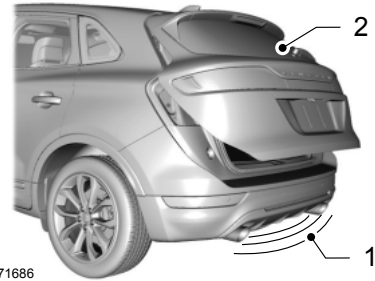
With the Remote Control



Press the remote control button twice within three seconds.

Hands-Free Feature (If Equipped)

Make sure you have an intelligent access transmitter within 3 feet (1 meter) of the liftgate.



E171686

1. Move your foot under and away from the rear bumper similar to a kicking motion. Do not move your foot sideways or the sensors may not detect the motion. For vehicles equipped with both the hands-free liftgate and trailer tow, move your foot under the bumper between the trailer hitch and the exhaust.
2. The liftgate will power open or close.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop or reverse the power operation.

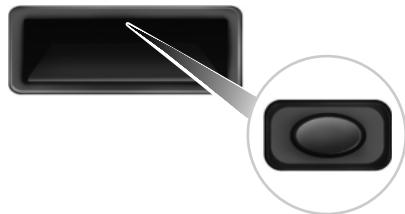
Locks

Note: Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open. Keep the intelligent access transmitter away from the rear bumper detection area while washing your car.

From Outside the Vehicle

Opening

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If an intelligent access transmitter is within 3 feet (1 meter) of the liftgate, the liftgate will unlock when you press the button in the liftgate pull cup handle.

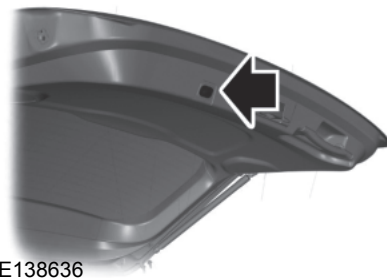


E138632

2. Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate after pressing the button. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop or reverse the power operation.

Closing



E138636

Press and release the button.

WARNING



Keep clear of the liftgate when activating the rear switch.

Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Manually move the liftgate to the desired height.
3. Press and hold the button on the liftgate until you hear a tone, indicating programming is complete.

Note: You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

The new open liftgate height will now be recalled when the power liftgate is opened. To change the programmed height, repeat the above procedure. Once you open the power liftgate, you can manually move it to a different height.

If the programmed height is less than full-open, you can fully open the liftgate by pushing it up. The programmed height remains set until you change it.

Locks

Obstacle Detection

When Closing

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and three short tones sound. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

Note: *Entering your vehicle while the liftgate is closing can cause your vehicle to bounce and activate obstacle detection. To prevent this, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle. Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the liftgate open while driving.*

When Opening

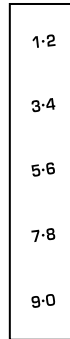
The system stops when it detects an obstacle and three short tones sound. Remove the obstacle to operate the liftgate.

KEYLESS ENTRY

SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keypad is located near the driver window. It is invisible until touched and then it lights up so you can see and touch the appropriate buttons.

Note: *If you enter your entry code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Re-enter your entry code more slowly.*



E138637

You can use the keypad to do the following:

- Lock or unlock the doors.
- Recall memory seat and mirror positions.
- Program and erase user codes.
- Arm and disarm the anti-theft alarm.

You can operate the keypad with the factory-set five-digit entry code. The code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from an authorized dealer. You can also create up to five of your own five-digit personal entry codes.

Programming a Personal Entry Code

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory-set code.
2. Press **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Enter your personal five-digit code. You must enter each number within five seconds of each other.
4. Press **1-2** on the keypad to save personal code 1.

The doors will lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.

Locks

To program additional personal entry codes, repeat Steps 1-3, then for Step 4:

- Press **3•4** to save personal code 2.
- Press **5•6** to save personal code 3.
- Press **7•8** to save personal code 4.
- Press **9•0** to save personal code 5.

Tips:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory-set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.

Recalling Memory Positions

The programmed entry codes will recall driver memory positions as follows:

- Entry code 1 will recall driver 1 memory positions.
- Entry code 2 will recall driver 2 memory positions.
- Entry code 3 will recall driver 3 memory positions.

Note: *Personal entry codes 4 and 5 will not recall memory positions.*

Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the factory-set five-digit code.
2. Press and release **1•2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1•2** for two seconds. You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes will erase and only the factory-set five-digit code will work.

Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad will go into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times (35 consecutive button presses). This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash.

The anti-scan feature turns off after any of the following occur:

- One minute of keypad inactivity passes.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.

- You switch the ignition on.
- You unlocking the vehicle using intelligent access.

Unlocking and Locking the Doors

To Unlock the Driver Door

Enter the factory-set five-digit code or your personal code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate.

Note: *All doors will unlock if the two-stage unlocking feature is disabled. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 67).*

To Unlock All Doors

Enter the factory-set code or your personal code, then press **3•4** control within five seconds.

To Lock All Doors

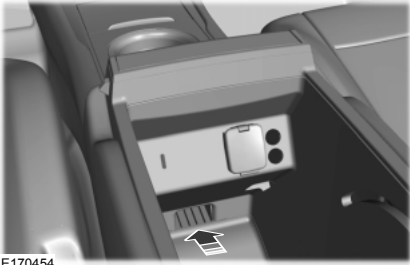
Press and hold **7•8** and **9•0** at the same time with the driver door closed. You do not need to enter the keypad code first.

Locks

Displaying the Factory-Set Code

Note: *You will need to have two programmed intelligent access keys for this procedure.*

To display the factory-set code in the information display:



1. Open the center console lid.
2. Place the first programmed key in the backup slot.
3. Press the **AUTO-START-STOP** button once and wait a few seconds.
4. Press the **AUTO-START-STOP** button again and remove the key.

5. Within ten seconds, insert the second programmed key into the backup slot, and then press the **AUTO-START-STOP** button.

The factory-set code will appear in the information display for a few seconds.

Note: *The code may not display until after any other warning messages first display.*

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.*

Note: *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting problems if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine if a problem occurs.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.*

SecuriLock™

The system is an engine immobilization system. The intended design is to help prevent the engine from starting unless a coded key programmed to your vehicle is used. Using the wrong key may prevent the engine from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, a malfunction has happened and a message may appear in the information display.

Automatic Arming

The vehicle arms immediately after you switch the ignition off.

Automatic Disarming

If you switch the ignition on with a coded key you disarm the vehicle. If you unlock the doors with the touch handle you disarm the alarm.

Replacement Keys

Note: *Your vehicle comes equipped with two intelligent access keys.*

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and activates the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your programmed transmitters are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

See your authorized dealer to have additional keys programmed to your vehicle.

Security

ANTI-THEFT ALARM (If Equipped)

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key, remote control or keyless entry keypad.

The direction indicators will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in the ignition. Electronically lock the vehicle to arm the alarm.

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:


- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control or keyless entry keypad.
- Switch the ignition on or start the vehicle.
- Use a key in the driver's door to unlock the vehicle, then switch the ignition on within 12 seconds.

Note: *Pressing the panic button on the remote control will stop the horn and signal indicators, but will not disarm the system.*

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

 Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 141).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.

2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.




E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

Power Tilt and Telescope Steering Column (If Equipped)

WARNING

 Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 141).



E161834

Use the control on the side of the steering column to adjust the position.

To adjust:

- Tilt: press the top or bottom of the control.
- Telescope: press the front or rear of the control.

Steering Wheel

Memory Feature

You can save and recall the steering column position with the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 145).

Pressing the adjustment control during memory recall cancels the operation. The column responds to the adjustment control.

The steering column sets a stopping position just short of the end of the column position to prevent damage to the steering column. A new stopping position sets if the steering column encounters an object when tilting or telescoping.

To reset the steering column to its normal stopping position:

1. Press the steering column control again after encountering the new stopping position.
2. Continue pressing the control until it reaches the end of the column position.

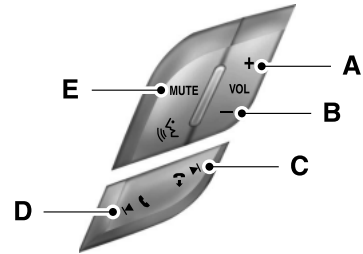
A new stopping position is set. The next time you tilt or telescope the steering column, it will stop just short of the end of the column position.

Easy Entry and Exit Feature

When you switch the ignition off, the steering column will move to the full up position to allow extra room to exit your vehicle. The column will return to the previous setting when you switch the ignition on. You can enable or disable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 111).

AUDIO CONTROL (If Equipped)

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E145979

- A Volume up
- B Volume down
- C Seek up or next
- D Seek down or previous
- E Mute

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

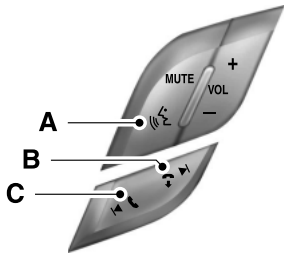
- tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset
- play the next or the previous track.

Steering Wheel

Press and hold the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
- seek through a track.

VOICE CONTROL (If Equipped)



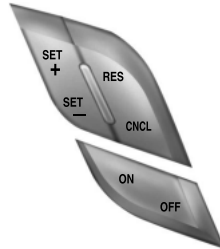
E145980

- A Voice recognition
- B End a call
- C Answer a call

See **MyLincoln Touch™** (page 352).

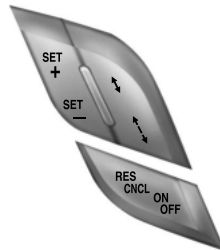
CRUISE CONTROL

Type 1



E145976

Type 2



E145977

See **Cruise Control** (page 203).

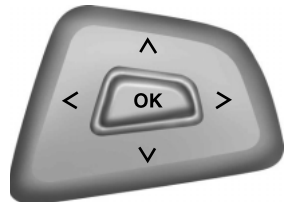
INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E145981

See **Information Displays** (page 111).

Cluster Display Control Features



E145982

Steering Wheel

Use this control to access some of the MyLincoln Touch features in the information display. Navigate through the screen and press **OK** to select. See **MyLincoln Touch™** (page 352).

HEATED STEERING WHEEL (If Equipped)

See **MyLincoln Touch™** (page 352).

Wipers and Washers

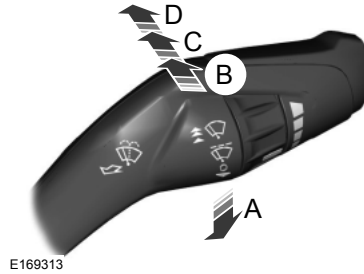
WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

Note: Make sure you switch off the wipers before entering a car wash.

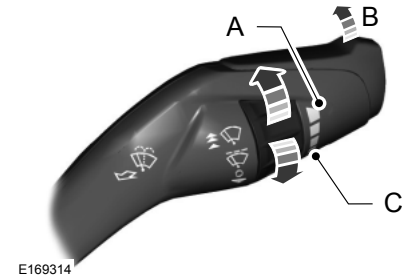
Note: Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

Note: Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.



- A Single wipe
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Normal wipe
- D High speed wipe

Intermittent Wipe



- A Shortest wipe interval
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Longest wipe interval

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed dependent wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes will decrease.

Wipers and Washers

AUTOWIPERS (If Equipped)

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

Note: Make sure you switch off the windshield wipers before entering a car wash.

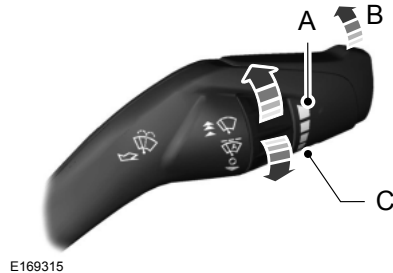
Note: Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

Note: If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, your low beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.

Note: Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.

In these conditions, you can do the following to help keep your windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch the autowipers off.



- A Highest sensitivity
- B On
- C Lowest sensitivity

The autowipers feature uses a rain sensor. You will find it in the area around the interior mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and automatically turns on the wipers. It will adjust the wiper speed by the amount of moisture that the sensor detects on the windshield.

Note: This autowiper feature is automatically set to on and remains on until you switch it off in the information display. You can also switch the feature back on at any time. See **Autowipers** (page 86).

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor. Set the control to low sensitivity, and the wipers will turn on when the rain sensor detects a large amount of moisture on the windshield. Set the control to high sensitivity, and the wipers will turn on when the rain sensor detects a small amount of moisture on the windshield.

Wipers and Washers

Note: When you set the wiper system to intermittent wipe and the autowiper system is on, the autowiper sensitivity setting adjusts the wiper speed according to the moisture on the windshield only. Use the wiper lever to wipe the windshield on-demand.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive. If the area around the mirror is dirty, then the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.



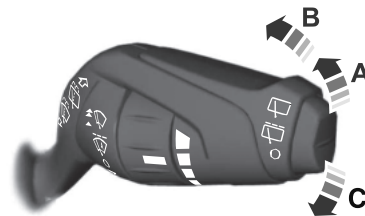
E169316

To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you.

A wipe will occur a few seconds after washing to clear any remaining washer fluid. This feature can be switched on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Rear Window Wiper



E168043

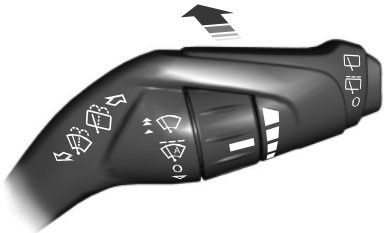
- A Intermittent wipe
- B Low-speed wipe
- C Off

Wipers and Washers

Press the top of the button at the end of the lever to switch on the intermittent wiper. Press the button again to switch on low-speed wipe. Press the bottom of the button to switch the wiper off, or to change the wiper speed from low-speed to intermittent.

When you shift into **R** (Reverse), the rear wiper will turn on to intermittent if the front wiper sensor activates the front wipers.

Rear Window Washer

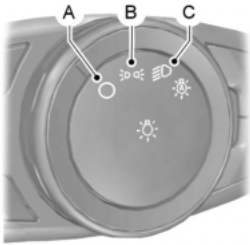


E168044

To operate the rear washer and spray the rear window, push the lever away from you. When you release the lever, the wiper will operate for a short time.

Lighting

LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

- A Off
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps
- C Headlamps

High Beams



E162679

- Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.
- Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Headlamp Flasher




E162680

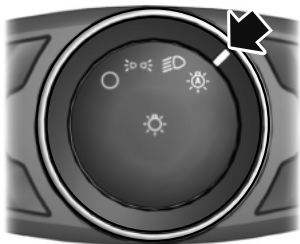
- Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

Lighting

AUTOLAMPS (If Equipped)

WARNING

 The daytime running lamps system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Also, the autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a collision.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps will automatically turn on in low light situations or when wipers activate.

If equipped, the following also activate when the lighting control is in the autolamps position and you switch them on in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.
- Automatic high beam control.
- Adaptive headlamp control.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 111).

Note: *With the headlamps in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the autolamps system turns the headlamps on.*

Note: *If the lighting control switch is in the autolamps position and the headlamps are off, the parking lamps will light as signature lighting. If the headlamps are on, or the lighting control switch is in the parking lamps position, the parking lamps will not light as signature lighting.*

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

The windshield wiper activated headlamps turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on and the lighting control switch is in the autolamps position. They will turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps will not turn on by wiper activation:

- During a mist wipe.
- When the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

Note: *If you have autolamps and autowipers switched on, the low beam headlamps will turn on automatically when the windshield wipers operate continuously.*

Lighting

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

Note: If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.



E165366

- A Press repeatedly or press and hold to dim.
- B Press repeatedly or press and hold to brighten.


HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (If

Equipped)

WARNING

 The daytime running lamps system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Also, the autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a collision.

Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable)

When you switch the ignition to the on position and the lighting control is in the off, autolamps or parking lamp position, the daytime running lamps will turn on whenever the headlamps are off. They turn off only when the headlamps are on.

Lighting

Type 2 - Configurable

Note: *If this type is equipped, you are able to switch the daytime running lamps on or off using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 111).*

When the daytime running lamps are switched on in the information display and you switch the ignition to the on position with the lighting control in the autolamps position, the daytime running lamps turn on whenever the headlamps are off.

The other lighting control switch positions do not activate the daytime running lamps and can be used to temporarily override autolamp control.

When switched off in the information display, the daytime running lamps are off in all lighting control switch positions.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL (If Equipped)

The system will automatically turn on your high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. When it detects the headlights of an approaching vehicle, the tail lamps of the preceding vehicle or street lighting, the system will turn off the high beams before they distract other drivers. The low beams remain on.

Note: *If it appears that automatic control of the high beams is not functioning properly, check the windshield in front of the camera for a blockage. A clear view of the road is required for proper system operation. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field-of-view repaired.*

Note: *If the system detects a blockage, for example bird droppings, bug splatter, snow or ice, the system will go into low beam mode until you clear the blockage. A message may also appear in the instrument cluster display noting the front camera is blocked.*

Note: *Typical road dust, dirt and water spots will not affect the performance of the automatic high beam system. However, in cold or inclement weather conditions, you will notice a decrease in the availability of the high beam system, especially at start up. If you want to change the beam state independently of the system, you may switch the high beams on or off using the multifunction switch. Automatic control will resume when conditions are correct.*

Note: *Modification of the vehicle ride height such as using much larger tires, may degrade feature performance.*

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to decide when to switch the high beams off and on.

Once the system is active, the high beams will switch on if:

- the ambient light level is low enough
- there is no traffic in front of the vehicle
- the vehicle speed is greater than 25 mph (40 km/h)

Lighting

The high beams will switch off if:

- the system detects the headlamps of an approaching vehicle or the tail lamps of a preceding vehicle.
- vehicle speed falls below 16 mph (25 km/h)
- the ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required
- the system detects severe rain, snow or fog
- the camera is blocked

Activating the System

Switch on the system using the information display and autolamps. See **Information Displays** (page 111). See **Autolamps** (page 90).



E142451

Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position.

Manually Overriding the System



E169254

When the automatic control has activated the high beams, pushing or pulling the stalk will provide a temporary override to low beam.

Use the information display menu to permanently deactivate the system, or turn the lighting control switch from autolamps to headlamps.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



E170427

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Lighting

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

WELCOME LIGHTING

The Lincoln welcome mat projection lights are on the bottom of the exterior mirror housings. They will project an image onto the ground a short distance from your vehicle when welcome lighting or lighted entry turns on.

For auto-fold mirrors, the Lincoln welcome mat will turn on when welcome lighting or lighted entry turns on and the mirrors have been automatically folded in upon locking or using the switch on the door.

Note: Moisture, frost and ice build-up or other types of contamination on the surface of the light lens can cause non-permanent distortion or reduced brightness of the image. Do not use abrasive materials to clean the lens.

Note: If you enable auto-fold and then you fold the mirrors in manually to the door window glass, then the welcome mats will not turn on.

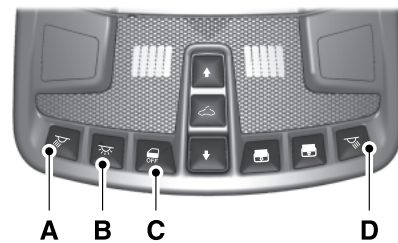
INTERIOR LAMPS

The interior lamps turn on when:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press switch A on the front interior lamp.

Front Interior Lamp

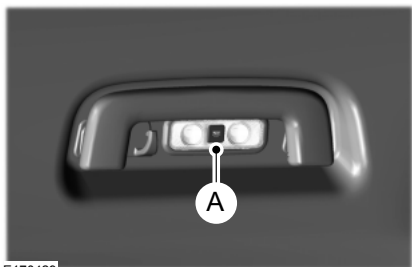
Note: Touch switch C to switch the door function off when you open any door. The indicator lamp will illuminate amber when the door function is off. When the door function is off and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps will stay off. Touch switch C again to switch the door function back on. The indicator lamp will illuminate blue when the door function is on. When the door function is on and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps will switch on.



E176210

- A. Left-hand side map lamp switch.
- B. All lamps on switch.
- C. Door function switch.
- D. Right-hand side map lamp switch.

Rear Interior Lamp (If Equipped)



E170429

The rear interior lamps are located in the headliner by the grab handles.

- You can switch individual rear lamps on independently by pressing the switch (A).


AMBIENT LIGHTING (If Equipped)


The ambient lighting system is adjusted with the MyLincoln Touch. See **MyLincoln Touch™** (page 352).

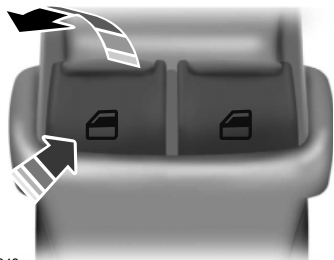
Windows and Mirrors

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

 Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

 When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E146043

Note: You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

Press the switch to open the window.

Lift the switch to close the window.

One-Touch Down

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up


Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Bounce-Back

The window will stop automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature


WARNING

 When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within a few seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the switch before the window closes fully.

Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

 The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.

Windows and Mirrors

2. Release the control.
3. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
4. Release the control.
5. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
6. Release the control.
7. Press and hold the control until the window is fully open.
8. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
9. Release the control.
10. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
11. Repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

Window Lock



E144072

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It will illuminate when you lock the rear window controls.

Accessory Delay

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Note: You can switch this feature on and off in the information display or contact an authorized dealer. See **General Information** (page 111).

Note: To operate this feature, make sure the accessory delay is not switched on.

Opening the Windows

You can open the windows only for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

Closing the Windows

WARNING



When closing the windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Windows and Mirrors

To close the windows, press and hold the remote control lock button. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E144073

- A Left-hand mirror.
- B Adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror.

To adjust a mirror:

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control will light.
2. Adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

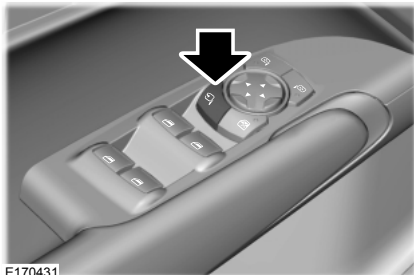
Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Auto-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)

The exterior mirrors fold in toward the glass automatically when you place the transmission into park (P), open a front door and then lock your vehicle by using either the lock button on the door or with the lock button on your remote transmitter. Auto-folding mirrors unfold and return to their original position automatically after you unlock your vehicle, and then open and close the driver's door.

You can switch this feature on and off through the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

Windows and Mirrors



E170431

You can fold the mirrors on demand by pressing the door lock control located on the door. The control will light and the mirrors will fold in toward the glass. Press the control again to unfold the mirrors. The control light will turn off.

Note: *If you use the control to fold the mirrors on demand and the auto fold feature is switched on, you must use the control again to unfold them.*

Loose Mirror

You can manually fold an auto-folding mirror by pulling it toward the door window glass. This may cause the mirror to appear loose and it will need to be re-synchronized. Press the control to fold the mirrors in until the movement stops. You will hear a click that indicates re-synchronization. If you do not hear a click, use the control again to fold the mirrors all the way out, and then in again. Once you hear the click, the mirrors will operate normally until you fold them manually again.

Heated Exterior Mirrors

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 138).

Memory Mirrors

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 145).

Auto-Dimming Feature

The driver's exterior mirror automatically dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.

Lincoln Welcome Mat

Projection lights, on the bottom of the mirror housings, project an image onto the ground a short distance from the vehicle. See **Lighting** (page 89).

Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If Equipped)

WARNING

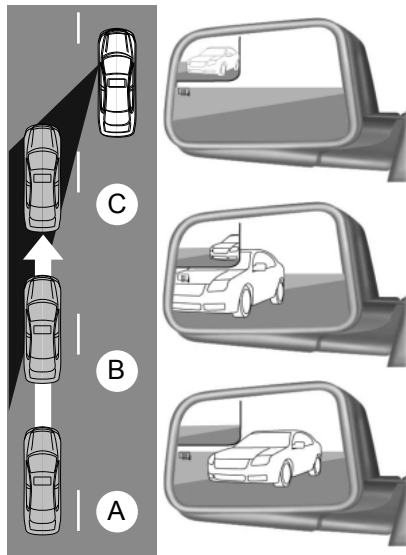


Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

The blind spot mirror has a wide-angle mirror inside the exterior mirror that can increase visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Windows and Mirrors

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you intend to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear and carefully change lanes.



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

Blind Spot Monitor (if Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 218).

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

Windows and Mirrors

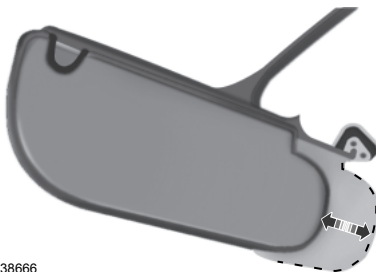
You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Auto-Dimming Mirror

Note: Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

MOONROOF (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

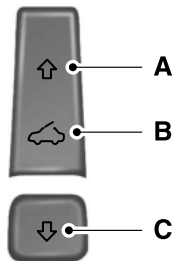
Windows and Mirrors

WARNINGS



When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof and sunscreen controls are on the overhead console and have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, touch the control a second time.



E144499

- A Open
- B Vent
- C Close

Opening and Closing the Moonroof

Touch (A) to open the moonroof. It will stop short of the fully opened position.

Note: *This position helps to reduce wind noise or rumbling which may happen with the moonroof fully open. Touch (A) again to fully open the moonroof.*

Touch (C) to close the moonroof.

Bounce-Back

The moonroof will stop automatically and reverse some distance if an obstacle is detected while closing.

Touch and hold (C) within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function.

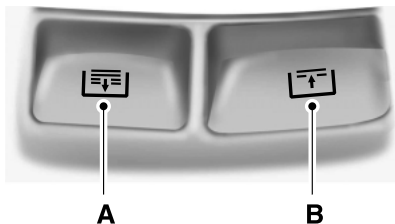
Venting the Moonroof

Touch (B) to vent the moonroof.

Touch (C) to close it.

Windows and Mirrors

Power Sunscreen



E145985

- A Close
- B Open

Touch the associated control to operate the sunscreen.

Press and release the rear of the control to open the moonroof. If the sunscreen is closed, it will automatically open before the moonroof opens. The moonroof will stop short of the fully opened position.

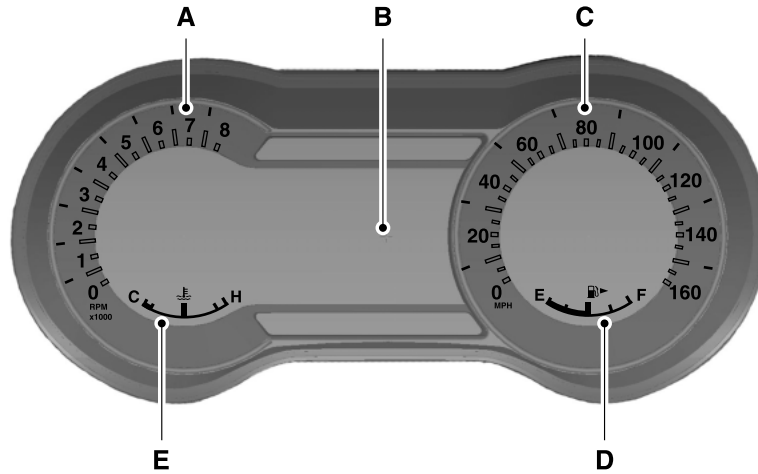
Note: *This position helps to reduce wind noise or rumbling which may happen with the moonroof fully open. Press and hold the control again to fully open the moonroof.*

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

The sunscreen must be open before opening the moonroof. If you touch the moonroof open control while the sunscreen is in its closed position, the sunscreen will open first followed by the moonroof. If both the sunscreen and moonroof are open and you touch the moonroof close control, the moonroof will close first followed by the sunscreen.

Instrument Cluster

GAUGES



E170368

- A Tachometer
- B Information display

Instrument Cluster

- C Speedometer
- D Fuel gauge
- E Engine coolant temperature gauge

Information Display

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 111).

Fuel Gauge

Note: *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th.

Instrument Cluster

Variations:

Driving type (fuel economy conditions)	Fuel gauge position	Distance-to-empty
Highway driving	1/16th	35 miles to 80 miles (56 km to 129 km)
Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle)	1/16th	35 miles (56km)

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

WARNING



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp, but do not display when you start your vehicle.*

Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)



The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in: See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 204).

On (white light): Illuminates when you turn the adaptive cruise control system on. Turns off when you turn the speed control system off.

Engaged (green light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system engages. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged.

Instrument Cluster

Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have normal braking (without Anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 218).

Brake System



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that you do not have the parking brake engaged. If you do not have the parking brake engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by an authorized dealer.

WARNING



Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Cruise Control (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature on.

Direction Indicator



Illuminates when you turn the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 294).

Door Ajar



Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Electric Park Brake



It will illuminate or flash when the electric parking brake has a malfunction. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 183).

Instrument Cluster

Engine Coolant Temperature



Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 285).

Engine Oil



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 284).

Note: Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

Fasten Safety Belt



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. See **Safety Belt Minder** (page 43).

Front Airbag



If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Heads Up Display (If Equipped)



A red beam of lights will illuminate on the windshield in certain instances when using adaptive cruise control or the collision warning system. It will also illuminate momentarily when you start your vehicle to make sure the display works.

High Beam



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Hood Ajar



Displays when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Low Fuel Level



It will illuminate when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning



It will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Instrument Cluster

Low Washer Fluid



It will illuminate when the windshield washer fluid is low.

Parking Lamps



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

Powertrain Fault



Illuminates when the system has detected a powertrain or an all-wheel drive fault. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Service Engine Soon



If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after you start the engine, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of your vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On board diagnostics (OBD) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced. See **Emission Control System** (page 168).

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

WARNING



Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

When you first switch the ignition on, before engine start, the service engine soon indicator light illuminates to check the bulb and to indicate whether your vehicle is ready for inspection maintenance testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until you crank the engine, and then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that your vehicle is not ready for inspection maintenance testing. See **Emission Control System** (page 168).

Stability Control



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction, the system will switch off. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 190).

Instrument Cluster

Stability Control Off



It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 190).

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Keyless Warning Alert

The horn will sound twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key and your vehicle is in RUN, indicating your vehicle is still on.


Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Information Displays

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

 Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel. The information display provides the corresponding information.

Information Display Controls



E170369

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Main menu

From the main menu bar on the left side of the information display, you can choose from the following categories:



Trip 1 & 2



Fuel Economy



Driver Assist



Settings

Scroll up or down to highlight one of the categories and then press the right arrow key or **OK** to enter into that category. Press the left arrow key as needed to exit back to the main menu.

Trip 1 & 2



Choose between the standard or enhanced trip display.

Information Displays

Trip 1 & 2	
Distance to E	Normal or Towing
Average fuel economy	
Trip timer	
Press and hold OK to reset the currently displayed trip information.	

- Trip odometer — shows the accumulated trip distance.
- Trip Timer— when you switch your vehicle off the timer stops and then restarts when you restart your vehicle.
- Average fuel economy — shows the average fuel economy for a given trip.

Fuel Economy



Use the left or right arrow buttons to choose the desired fuel economy display.

Fuel Economy
Instantaneous Fuel Economy

- Instantaneous Fuel Economy: This display shows a visual graph of your instantaneous fuel economy.

Information Displays

Driver Assist



Use the up or down arrow buttons to choose between the following display options.

Driver Assist		
Traction Control - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Blindspot - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Collision Warn	Sensitivity	High, Normal or Low
Cross Traffic - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Cruise Control	Adaptive or Normal	—
Driver Alert	On or Display	—
Intelligent AWD - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Lane keeping Sys	Mode	Alert, Aid or Alert + Aid
	Intensity	High, Normal or Low
Front Park Aid - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Rear Park Aid - check enabled or uncheck disabled		

Information Displays

Settings



In this mode, you can configure different driver setting choices.

Note: Some items are optional and may not appear.

Note: Some MyKey items will only appear if a MyKey is set.

Settings				
Vehicle	Drive Control	Handling in D	Comfort, Normal or Sport	
		Handling in S	Normal or Sport	
		Performance in S	Normal or Sport	
	DTE Calculation	Normal or Towing		
	Easy Entry / Exit - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Auto Engine Off - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Lighting	Auto Highbeam	On or Off	
		Autolamp Delay	Select time interval	
		Daytime Lights	On or Off	
		Welcome Lighting - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
	Locks	Autolock - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
		Autounlock - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
		Mislock - check enabled or uncheck disabled		

Information Displays

Settings				
		Remote Unlocking	All doors or Driver door	
		Switches Inhibit - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
	Mirror	Autofold - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
	Oil Life	Remaining Life XXX% - Hold OK to Reset		
	Power Liftgate - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Remote Start	Climate Control	Auto or Last Settings	
		Front and Wheel	Auto Heated or Off	
		Duration	5, 10 or 15 minutes	
		System - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
	Windows	Remote - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
	Wipers	Courtesy Wipe - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
		Rain Sensing - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
	MyKey	Create MyKey	Hold OK to Create MyKey	—
		911 Assist	Always On or User Selectable	—
Traction Control		Always On or User Selectable	—	

Information Displays

Settings			
	Max Speed	Choose desired speed or off	—
	Speed Minder	Choose desired speed or off	—
	Volume Limiter	Always On or User Selectable	—
	Do Not Disturb	Always On or User Selectable	—
	Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear All MyKeys	—
Display	Distance Unit	Choose your applicable setting	—
	Temperature Unit	Choose your applicable setting	—
	Language	Choose your applicable setting	—
	Speedo in km/h - check enabled or uncheck disabled		

Information Displays

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages will display or be available. The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.



Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. The information display will automatically remove other messages after a short time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

Active Park

Message	Action
Active Park Fault	The system requires service due to a malfunction. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Adaptive Cruise Malfunction	A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise control from engaging. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 204).
Adaptive Cruise Not Available	A condition exists such that the adaptive cruise cannot function properly. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 204).
Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 204).

Information Displays

Message	Action
Normal Cruise Active Automatic Braking Turned Off	The system has disabled the automatic braking.
Front Sensor Not Aligned	A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise control from engaging.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	The adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.
Adaptive Cruise Speed Too Low to Activate	The vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.
Adaptive Cruise Shift Down	The adaptive cruise is automatically adjusting the gap distance and the driver needs to shift the transmission into a lower gear.

AdvanceTrac™

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor.
AdvanceTrac Off On	The driver has disabled or enabled the traction control.

Information Displays

Airbag

Message	Action
Occupant Sensor BLOCKED Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor. Remove blockage.

Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle Alarm to Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle	Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See Anti-Theft Alarm (page 80).

Automatic Engine Shutdown

Message	Action
Engine Shuts Off in XX Seconds	The engine is getting ready to shut off.
Engine Shut Off for Fuel Economy	The engine has shut off to help increase fuel economy.
Engine Shuts Off in XX Seconds Press Ok to Override	The engine is getting ready to shut off. You can press OK on the left steering wheel button to override the shut down.

Information Displays

All-Wheel Drive

Message	Action
AWD Temporarily Disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD Off	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD Restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD Malfunction Service Required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Check Charging System	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Low Battery Features Temporarily Turned Off	The battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Your vehicle will disable various features to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.
Turn Power Off to Save Battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn your ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.

Information Displays

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Action
Blindspot System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Blindspot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The system sensors are blocked. See Blind Spot Information System (page 218).
Cross Traffic Vehicle Coming From X	The system detects a vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System (page 218).
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See Blind Spot Information System (page 218).
Cross Traffic System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Collision Warning System

Message	Action
Collision Warning Malfunction	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Collision Warning Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See Collision Warning System (page 224).
Collision Warning Not Available	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Doors and Locks

Message	Action
X Door Ajar	The door(s) listed is not completely closed.
Luggage compartment door ajar	The luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Hood Ajar	The hood is not completely closed.
Switches Inhibited Security Mode	The system has disabled the door switches.
Child Lock Malfunction Service Required	There is a system malfunction with the child locks. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Factory Keypad Code XXXXX	The factory keypad code displays in the information display after system resets the keypad. See Keyless Entry (page 76).

Driver Alert

Message	Action
Driver Alert Warning Rest Now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Warning Rest Suggested	Take a rest break soon.

Information Displays

Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer. See Hill Start Assist (page 185).

Keys and Intelligent Access

Message	Action
Press Brake to START	A reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
No Key Detected	The system does not detect a key in your vehicle. See Keyless Starting (page 158).
Restart Now or Key is Needed	You pressed the start/stop button to switch off the engine and your vehicle does not detect your intelligent access key inside your vehicle.
Run Power Active	Your vehicle is in the run ignition state.
Starting System Fault	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.

Information Displays

Message	Action
Key Program Successful	You have successfully programmed an intelligent access key to the system.
Key Program Failure	You have failed to program an intelligent access key to the system.
Max Number of Keys Learned	You have programmed the maximum number of keys to the system.
Not Enough Keys Learned	You have not programmed enough keys to the system.
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	The key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.
Engine On	Inform the driver that they are exiting the vehicle and the engine is on.

Lane Keeping System

Message	Action
Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests the driver to keep their hands on the steering wheel.

Information Displays

Maintenance

Message	Action
LOW Engine Oil Pressure	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change Engine Oil Soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See Engine Oil Check (page 284).
Oil Change Required	The oil life left is at 0%. See Engine Oil Check (page 284).
Brake Fluid Level LOW	The brake fluid level is low, inspected the brake system immediately. See Brake Fluid Check (page 289).
Check Brake System	The brake system needs servicing. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Engine Coolant Overtemperature	The engine coolant temperature is excessively high.
Washer Fluid Level Low	The washer fluid is low, refill washer fluid.
Power Reduced to Lower Engine Temp	The engine has reduced power to help reduce high engine temperature.
Transport / Factory Mode	Your vehicle is still in Transport or Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. See an authorized dealer.
See Manual	The powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.

Information Displays

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey Not Created	You cannot program a MyKey.
MyKey Active Drive Safely	MyKey is active.
Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h	When switching on your vehicle and MyKey is in use, displays that the MyKey speed limit is on.
Near Vehicle Top Speed	MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
Vehicle at Top Speed of MyKey Setting	You have reached the speed limit set for your MyKey.
Check Speed Drive Safely	You have an active MyKey with a programmed set speed limit.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Belt-Minder turns on with a MyKey in use.
AdvanceTrac On - MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, AdvanceTrac turns on.
Traction Control On - MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, traction control turns on.
MyKey Park Aid Cannot be Deactivated	With a MyKey in use, park aid is always on.
Lane Keeping Alert On MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, lane keeping alert turns on.

Information Displays

Park Aid

Message	Action
Check Front Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer. See Parking Aid (page 191).
Check Rear Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer. See Parking Aid (page 191).
Front Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Park Brake

Message	Action
Park Brake Engaged	You have set the parking brake and you have driven the vehicle more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after you have released the parking brake, contact an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not set.
Park Brake Maintenance Mode	The electric parking brake is running a diagnostic check.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake is set but you have not released it.

Information Displays

Message	Action
Press Brake To Release Park Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set but you have not released it and your vehicle is moving.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric park brake system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Park Brake System Overheated	You have not released the electric parking brake causing it to overheat.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake is set and you have started your vehicle.
Park Brake Applied	The electric parking brake is set.
Park Brake Released	You have released the electric parking brake.

Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.

Information Displays

Remote Start

Message	Action
To Drive: Press Brake and Gear Shift Button	A reminder to apply the brake and push the gearshift button to drive your vehicle after a remote start.

Seats

Message	Action
Memory Recall Not Permitted While Driving	A reminder that memory seats are not available while driving.
Memory X Saved	Shows where you have saved your memory setting.

Starting System

Message	Action
Press Brake to Start	A reminder to apply the brake when starting your vehicle .
Cranking Time Exceeded	The starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start your vehicle.
Engine Start Pending Please Wait	The starter is attempting to start your vehicle.
Pending Start Cancelled	The system has cancelled the pending start.

Information Displays

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
LOW Tire Pressure	One or more tires on your vehicle has low tire pressure. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 326).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 326).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning or your spare tire is in use. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 326). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Traction Control

Message	Action
Traction Control Off / Traction Control On	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off or on. See Using Traction Control (page 187).
Spinout Detected Hazards Activated	A spinout has occurred and the hazards are on.

Information Displays

Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	See an authorized dealer.
Transmission Overheating Stop Safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as possible.
Transmission Service Required	See an authorized dealer.
Transmission Too Hot Press Brake	The transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool.
Transmission Limited Function See Manual	The transmission has overheated and has limited functionality. See Automatic Transmission (page 171).
Transmission Warming Up Please Wait	The transmission is too cold. Wait for it to warm up before you drive.
Transmission Not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message is typical after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode. See Changing the 12V Battery (page 290).
Transmission Adjusted	The transmission has adjusted the shift strategy.
Transmission Adapt Mode	The transmission is adjusting the shift strategy.
Transmission Indicate Mode Lockup On	The transmission is locked and unable to select gears.
Transmission Indicate Mode Lockup Off	The transmission is unlocked and free to select gears.
Invalid Gear Selection	You have selected an invalid gear.
Press Brake Pedal	You need to depress the brake pedal.

Information Displays

Message	Action
Depress Brake to Shift from Park	You need to depress the brake pedal before you can shift from P park.
Press N again to Enter Stay in Neutral Mode	You need to press the N neutral button again to enter neutral hold. See Automatic Transmission (page 171).
Stay in Neutral Mode Engaged	Neutral hold is active. See Automatic Transmission (page 171).
Stay in Neutral Tow Engaged See Manual to Disable	Neutral hold is active. See Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels (page 244).
SHIFT SYS FAULT Confirm Park Brake Apply Before Exiting the Vehicle	There is a system fault and you need to depress the park brake before you exit your vehicle. See an authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Cannot Shift Trans Use Park Brake to Secure Vehicle	There is a system fault and you need to depress the park brake before you exit your vehicle. See an authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Service Required	See an authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Vehicle is Shifting to Park	There is a system fault while you are shifting your vehicle to P park. See an authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Reverse Unavailable Service Required	There is a system fault while you are shifting your vehicle to R reverse. See your authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Drive Unavailable Select S for Drive Service Required	See an authorized dealer.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Neutral Unavailable Service Required	See an authorized dealer.

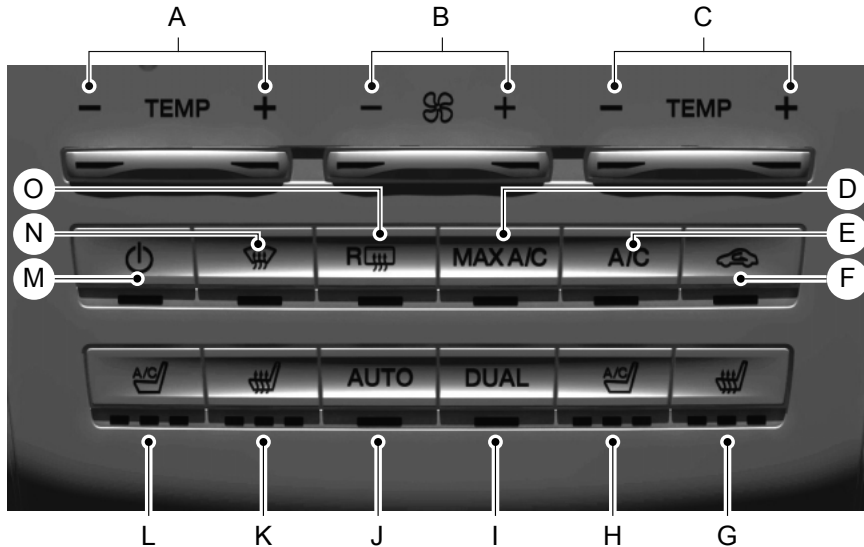
Information Displays

Message	Action
SHIFT SYS FAULT Sport Unavailable Service Required	See an authorized dealer.
Neutral Tow Engaged Turn Ignition Off for Towing	Neutral tow is active and you need to turn the ignition off. See Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels (page 244).
Neutral Tow Engaged Depress Brake and Select Park to Exit Neutral Tow	While attempting to exit neutral tow, you need to depress the brake pedal and select the P park button to deactivate. See Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels (page 244).
Neutral Tow Remove Park Brake for Towing	Neutral tow is active and you need to release the park brake. See Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels (page 244).
Neutral Tow Disengaged	You have switched off Neutral tow.

Climate Control

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

Note: You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 365).



E171369

Climate Control

- A **Driver temperature controls:** Press the control to increase or decrease the air temperature for the driver side of the vehicle. This control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when dual zone operation is off.
- B **Fan speed control:** Press the control to increase or decrease the volume of air circulated in your vehicle.
- C **Passenger temperature controls:** Press the control to increase or decrease the air temperature for the passenger side of the vehicle.
- D **MAX A/C:** Press the control to maximize cooling. The driver and passenger temperatures are set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, the air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.
- E **A/C:** Press the control to operate the air conditioning compressor. Use **A/C** with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. **Note:** In certain conditions, such as when using **MAX** defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the **A/C** control is off.
- F **Recirculated air:** Press the control to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with **A/C**) and may reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle. To reduce the possibility of fogging, recirculated air may turn off automatically or the system may prevent you from switching the feature on in all airflow modes except **MAX A/C**.
- G **Heated passenger seat control:** Press the control to operate the heated seat. See **Heated Seats** (page 147).
- H **Ventilated passenger seat control (if equipped):** Press the control to operate the ventilated seat. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 148).
- I **DUAL:** Press the control once to switch on the feature. When engaged, the feature allows the passenger to set a temperature that is independent from the driver setting. Press the control a second time to switch off the feature. The passenger setting automatically links with the driver setting. **Note:** The **DUAL** indicator automatically illuminates when adjusting the passenger's temperature.

Climate Control

- J **AUTO:** Press the control to switch on the fully automatic operation. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system automatically determines fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to heat or cool the vehicle to reach and maintain your desired temperature. **Note:** You can also use the **AUTO** control to link the passenger's temperature to the driver's temperature by pressing and holding the **AUTO** control for more than two seconds.
- K **Heated driver seat control:** Press the control to operate the heated seat. See **Heated Seats** (page 147).
- L **Ventilated driver seat control (if equipped):** Press the control to operate the ventilated seat. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 148).
- M **Power:** Press to switch the system off and on. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- N **Defrost:** Press the control to switch on to distribute air through the windshield defroster vents and de-mister vents. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- O **Heated rear window:** Switches the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 138).

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Note: Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Note: Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: To improve the time to reach comfort in hot weather, drive with the windows slightly open for 2-3 minutes after start-up or until your vehicle airs out.

Climate Control

Automatic Climate Control

Note: *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the cabin to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents. In addition, the fan may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during hot outside temperatures, or when the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system automatically uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically switches to using outside air.*

Heating the Interior Quickly

1. Press the **AUTO** button.

2. Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Cooling the Interior Quickly

Press the **MAX A/C** button.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

1. Press the defrost button.

2. Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3. Direct the instrument panel side air vents toward the side windows.
4. Close the instrument panel vents.

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Heated Rear Window

Note: *You must switch the ignition on to use this feature.*



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. Press the button again within 10 minutes to switch it off. It switches off automatically after 10 minutes, or when you switch the ignition off.

Climate Control

Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines, which your warranty does not cover.

Heated Exterior Mirror

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it has frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.

Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

Both heated mirrors remove ice, mist and fog when you switch on the heated rear window.

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter. It is located inside the instrument panel and to the left of the glove box.

The particulate filtration system reduces the concentration of airborne particles such as dust, spores and pollen in the air supplied to the interior of your vehicle.

Note: Make sure the cabin air filter is in place at all times. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

The particulate filtration system gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 461).

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

REMOTE START

The remote start feature allows you to pre-condition the interior of your vehicle. The climate control system works to achieve comfort according to your previous settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the system during remote start operation.

Turn the ignition on to return the system to its previous settings. You can now make adjustments normally, but you need to turn certain vehicle-dependent features back on, such as:

- Heated seats.
- Cooled seats.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Heated mirrors.
- Heated rear window.

You can adjust the default remote start settings using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 111).

Automatic Settings


In hot weather, the system is set to 72°F (22°C). The cooled seats are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display).


In moderate weather, the system either heats or cools (based on previous settings). The rear defroster, heated mirrors and heated seats do not automatically switch on.


In cold weather, the system is set to 72°F (22°C). The heated seats are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display). The rear defroster and heated mirrors automatically switch on.

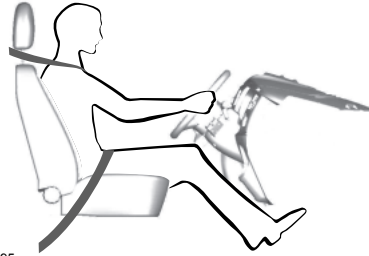
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

 Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

 Do not recline the seatback as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.

 Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:


- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.

- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.


HEAD RESTRAINTS


WARNINGS

 Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

Seats

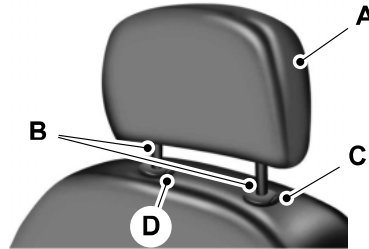
WARNINGS

 The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

 Install the head restraint properly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

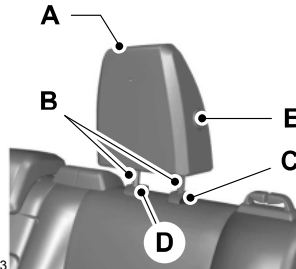
Note: *Adjust the seatback (front seats only) to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Front seat head restraint



E138642

Rear seat outboard head restraints

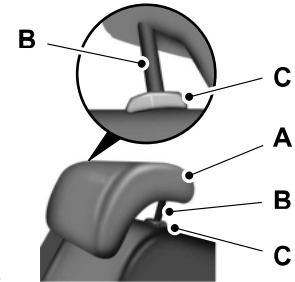


E138643

The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust (front seat only) and unlock button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.
- E Fold button.

Rear center head restraint



E187325

Seats

The rear center head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

Raising the Front Seat Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Front Seat Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Folding the Rear Seat Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button E.
2. Pull it back up to reset.

Tilting Head Restraints

The front seat head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



E144727

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

Seats

POWER SEATS

WARNINGS



Do not adjust the driver's seat or

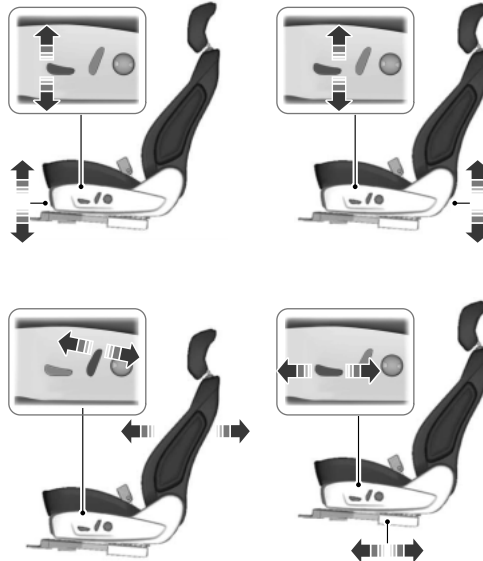
WARNINGS

seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

WARNINGS



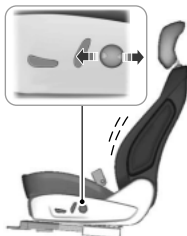
Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.



E144632

Seats

Power Lumbar



E165608

MEMORY FUNCTION

WARNINGS



Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature will automatically recall the position of the driver seat, power mirrors and optional power steering column. The memory control is located on the driver door.



E142554

Saving a PreSet Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the seat, exterior mirrors and power steering column to your desired position.
3. Press and hold the desired preset button until you hear a single tone.

Note: A confirmation that a memory preset is saved will appear in the information display.

You can save up to three preset memory positions. You can save a memory preset at any time.

Recalling a PreSet Position

Press and release the preset button associated with your desired driving position. The seat, mirrors and steering column will move to the position stored for that preset.

Note: You can only recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when you place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N) if the ignition is on.

Note: Press any seat or mirror adjustment switch (or any memory button) during a memory recall to cancel the operation.

Seats

You can also recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your intelligent access key fob if it is linked to a preset position.
- Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked key fob is present.
- Entering a personal entry code on the Securicode keypad. See **Keyless Entry** (page 76).

Note: *Using a linked key fob to recall your memory position when the ignition is off will move the seat and steering column to the Easy Entry position.*

Linking a PreSet Position to your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key

Your vehicle can save the preset memory positions for up to three remote controls or intelligent access (IA) keys.

1. With the ignition on, move the memory positions to the desired positions.

2. Press and hold the desired preset button for about five seconds. A tone will sound after about two seconds. Continue holding until a second tone is heard.
3. Within three seconds, press the lock button on the remote control you are linking.

To unlink a remote control, follow the same procedure – except in Step 3, press the unlock button on the remote control.

Easy Entry and Exit Feature

If you enable the easy entry and exit feature, it automatically moves the driver seat position rearward up to two inches (five centimeters) when you switch the ignition off. The driver seat will return to the previous position when you switch the ignition on.

You can enable or disable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 111).

REAR SEATS



E171298

Seats

Folding the Seatback

With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seatback forward. You may need to fold the outboard head restraints and lower the center head restraint first.

Unfolding the Seatback

Pull the seatback upward to unfold the seatback.

Recline Adjustment

With the seat occupied, pull the lever up to recline the seatback.

HEATED SEATS

Front Seats

WARNING



People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.




E146322

Touch the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

Seats

Rear Heated Seats (If Equipped)

WARNING

 Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Note: Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

The rear seat heat controls are located on the rear of the center console.

The heated seats only operate when the ignition is on.



E146322

- Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.
- Press again to deactivate.


The heated seat module resets at every ignition run cycle. While the ignition is on, press the high or low heated seat switch to enable heating mode. When activated, they will turn off automatically when you turn the engine off.

CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS (If

Equipped)

Heated Seats

WARNING

 Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Note: Do not do the following:

Seats

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146322

Touch the heated seat symbol on the touchscreen to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

Cooled Seats (If Equipped)

The cooled seats will only function when the engine is running.



E146309

Touch the cooled seat symbol on the touchscreen to cycle through the various cool settings and off. More indicator lights indicate cooler settings.

REAR SEAT ARMREST (If Equipped)



E138656

Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cupholder.

Universal Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)

HomeLink Wireless Control System (If Equipped)

WARNING



Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Note: Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.

Note: Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.

Note: We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons. See *Erasing the function button codes later in this section.*

Note: You can program a maximum of three devices. To change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, you must first erase the current settings. See *Erasing the function button codes later in this section.*



E142657

The universal garage door opener replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter that is integrated into the driver's sun visor.

The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. As well as being programmed for garage doors, the system transmitter can be programmed to operate entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting.

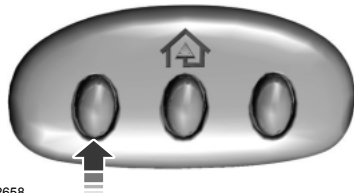
Additional system information can be found online at www.homelink.com or by calling the toll-free help line on 1-800-355-3515.

In-vehicle programming

This process is to program your hand-held transmitter and your in-vehicle HomeLink button.

Note: Put a new battery in the hand-held transmitter. This will ensure quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

Universal Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)



E142658

1. With your vehicle parked outside of the garage, turn your ignition to the **on** position, but do not start your vehicle.
2. Hold your hand-held garage door transmitter 1–3 inches (2–8 centimeters) away from the HomeLink button you want to program.
3. Using both hands, simultaneously, press and hold the desired HomeLink button and the hand-held transmitter button. **DO NOT** release either one until the HomeLink indicator light flashes slowly and then rapidly. When the indicator light flashes rapidly, both buttons may be released. The rapid flashing indicates successful training.

4. Press and hold the HomeLink button you programmed for five seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door. If your garage door does not operate, watch the HomeLink indicator light.

If the indicator light stays on, the programming is complete. See **Programming your garage door motor** later in this section.

If the indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then turns to a constant light, the HomeLink button is not programmed yet. Do the following:

Press and hold the HomeLink button while you press and release the hand-held transmitter button every 2 seconds. The HomeLink indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly once the HomeLink function button recognizes and accepts the hand-held transmitter's radio frequency signal.

After programming the HomeLink button, begin programming your garage door opener motor.

Note: *You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the cover or lamp lens on your garage door opener.*



E142659

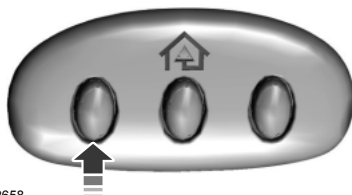
To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1 – 4.

For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink at www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515.

Programming your garage door opener motor

1. Press the learn button on the garage door opener motor and then you have 30 seconds to complete the next two steps.
2. Return to your vehicle.

Universal Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)

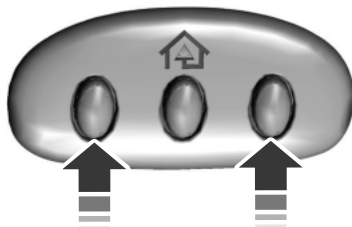


E142658

3. Press and hold the function button you want to program for 2 seconds, then release. Repeat this step. Depending on your brand of garage door opener, you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

Erasing the Function Button Codes

Note: You cannot erase individual buttons.



E142660

1. Press and hold the outer two function buttons simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator lights above the buttons flash rapidly.
2. When the indicator lights flash, release the buttons. The codes for all buttons are erased.

Reprogramming a Single Button

To program a device to a previously trained button, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired button. Do NOT release the button.

2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, follow Step 1 in the Programming section.

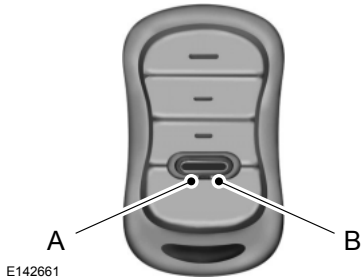
For questions or comments, contact HomeLink at www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515.

Programming to a Genie Intellicode 2 Garage Door Opener

Note: The Genie Intellicode 2 transmitter must already be programmed to operate with the garage door opener.

Note: To program HomeLink to the transmitter you must first put the transmitter into programming mode.

Universal Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)



- A. Red indicator light
- B. Green indicator light

1. Press and hold one of the buttons on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from green to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change to programming mode. If done properly the indicator light will appear red.
3. Hold the transmitter within 1–3 inches (2–8 centimeters) of the button on the visor you want to program.

4. Press and hold both the programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter and the button you want to program. The indicator light on the visor will flash rapidly when the programming is successful.

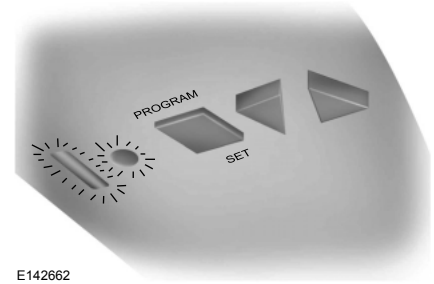
Note: *The Genie transmitter will transmit for up to 30 seconds. If HomeLink does not program within 30 seconds the Genie transmitter will need to be pressed again. If the Genie transmitter indicator light displays green and red, release the button until the indicator light turns off before pressing the button again.*

Once HomeLink has been programmed successfully, the Genie transmitter must be changed out of program mode. To do this:

1. Press and hold the previously programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from red to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change. If done correctly the indicator light will turn green.

Programming HomeLink to the Genie Intellicode Garage Door Opener Motor

Note: *You may need a ladder to access the garage door opener motor.*



1. Press and hold the program button on the garage door opener motor until both blue indicator lights turn on.
2. Release the program button. Only the smaller round indicator light should be on.
3. Press and release the program button. The larger purple indicator light will flash.

Note: *The next two steps must be completed in 30 seconds.*

Universal Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)

4. Press and release the Genie Intellicode 2 hand-held transmitter's previously programmed button. Both indicator lights on the garage door opener motor unit should now flash purple.
5. Press and hold the previously programmed button on the visor for 2 seconds. Repeat this step up to 3 times until the garage door moves.

Programming is now complete.

Clearing a HomeLink Device

To erase programming from the three HomeLink buttons press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. The indicator light will begin flashing in 10 to 20 seconds, at which time both buttons should be released. Programming has now been erased, and the indicator light should blink slowly to indicate the device is in train mode when any of the three HomeLink buttons are pressed.

FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Auxiliary Power Points

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING



Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *If you use the power point when your engine is not running, then the battery can discharge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*

Note: *Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This can damage the outlet and blow the fuse.*

Note: *Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or you may blow a fuse.*

Note: *Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.*

Note: *Improper use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Run the engine for full-capacity use of the power point. To prevent the battery from discharging:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or while the vehicle remains parked for extended periods of time.

Locations

Power points may be found:

- In front of the center console.
- Inside the center console storage bin.
- On the rear of the center console (12V or 110V AC)
- In the rear cargo area.

110 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)

WARNING



Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *The power point turns off when you switch off the ignition or the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.*

You can use the power point, located on the rear of the center console, for powering electrical devices that require up to 150 watts.

Auxiliary Power Points

When the indicator light, located on the power point, is:

- On — the power point is working, your ignition is on and you have the device plugged in.
 - Off — the power point is off, your ignition is off or you do not have a device plugged in.
 - Flashing — the power point is in fault mode.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment, measuring equipment, etc.
 - Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example, microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.

The power point temporarily turns off power if you exceed the 150 watt limit. It can also switch to a fault mode when it overloads, overheats or shorts. For overloading and shorting conditions, unplug your device and switch the ignition off and then back on. For overheating conditions, let the system cool off, then switch the ignition off and then back on.

The power point is not designed for electric devices such as:

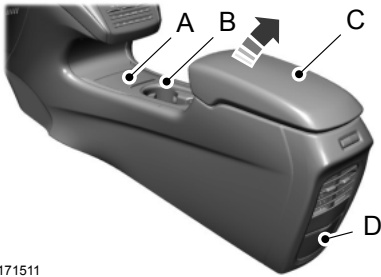
- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, compressor-driven refrigerators, etc.

Storage Compartments

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or collisions, including hot drinks which may spill.

Available console features include:

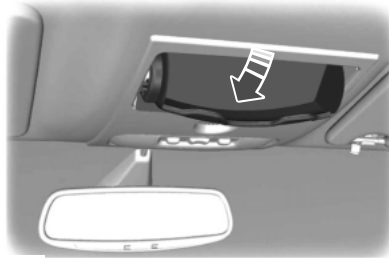


E171511

- A Front storage bin with auxiliary power point and media hub
- B Cupholders

- C Storage compartment with auxiliary power point
- D Auxiliary power point, 110 volt AC power point (optional)

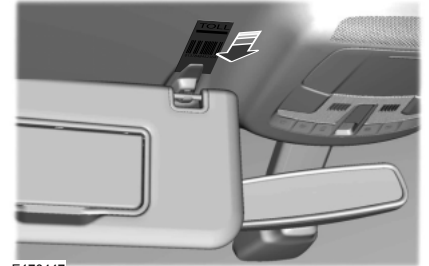
OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E75193

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

TICKET HOLDERS




E170447


Slide your toll ticket in the space provided.


Starting and Stopping the Engine


GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

 Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

 Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

 If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

KEYLESS STARTING

Note: *The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones.*

Note: *A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

Ignition Modes



E191075

The keyless starting system has three modes:

Off: Turns the ignition off.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

On: All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.

Start: Starts the engine.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

- Press the brake pedal, and then press the button for any length of time. An indicator light on the button illuminates when the ignition is on and when the engine starts.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with remote start, you can start your vehicle with the remote, and then drive away by pressing the brake pedal and pushing a button on the transmission. This allows you to drive away without pressing the engine start button.*

Before starting the engine, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Put the transmission in **P**.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Press the button.

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:



1. Open the center console lid.
2. Slide the remote into the back-up slot.

3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal, then the START button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the engine within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal and press the button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart the engine without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once the engine has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while the engine is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the engine if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

Note: *You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds (without the engine starting) before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.*

Automatic Engine Shutdown

If your vehicle is equipped with a keyless ignition, it has a feature that automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal).
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 111).
- During the countdown before engine shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Put the transmission in position **P**.
2. Press the button once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Note: *This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.*

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Note: If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shut down.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

1. Put the transmission in position **N** and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, put the transmission in position **P**.
3. Press and hold the button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.

4. Apply the parking brake.

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (2.5 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Note: The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.

- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

Fuel and Refueling

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel capless fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.



Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

WARNINGS



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.

- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.

Fuel and Refueling

- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

FUEL QUALITY

Note: *Do not use fuel additive products in your fuel tank. We recommend you use only high quality fuel without additives or other engine treatments.*

Note: *Your warranty will not cover any vehicle damage, loss of vehicle performance or repairs to your vehicle, caused by the use of fuel not recommended.*

Choosing the Right Fuel

Use only unleaded gasoline or unleaded gasoline blended with a maximum of 15% ethanol in your gasoline vehicle.

Do not use:

- Fuels containing more than 15% ethanol or E-85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Prohibited by law, you cannot use leaded fuel.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).

Note: *Use of any fuel other than recommended fuel can cause powertrain damage, impair the emission control system or cause loss of vehicle performance. Your warranty may not cover these damages.*

Octane Recommendations

We recommend regular unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. Some stations offer fuels posted as regular with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. We do not recommend fuels with an octane rating below 87.

To provide improved performance, we recommend premium fuel for severe duty usage such as trailer tow.

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.


If you have run out of fuel:


Fuel and Refueling

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. With keyless ignition, just start the engine. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8 liters) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8 liters) may be required.
- The service engine soon indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon indicator, See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 106).

Refilling With a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS

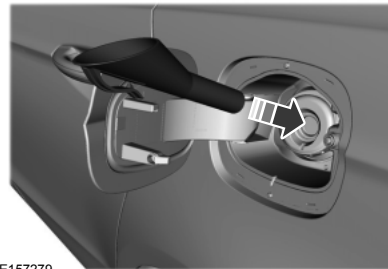
 Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the capless fuel system. This could damage the fuel system and its seal, and may cause fuel to run onto the ground instead of filling the tank, which could result in serious personal injury.

 Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels; they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it. The included funnel has been specially designed to work safely with your vehicle.*

When filling the vehicle's fuel tank from a portable fuel container, use the funnel included with the vehicle. The funnel is located in the rear of the vehicle, inside the load compartment, underneath the load floor carpet.

1. Locate the portable funnel that comes with your vehicle.



E157279

2. Slowly insert the funnel into the capless fuel system.









E157280

Fuel and Refueling






3. Fill the vehicle with fuel from the portable fuel container.
4. When done, clean the funnel or properly dispose of it. Extra funnels can be purchased from your authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

REFUELING

WARNINGS

-  Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.
-  Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.
-  Turn off your engine when you are refueling.
-  Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle.
-  Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel.
-  Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places.

WARNINGS

-  Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.
-  Do not use personal electronic devices while refueling.
-  Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.
-  Stop refueling after the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the second time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.
-  Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.


Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).

- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

Easy Fuel™ Capless Fuel System

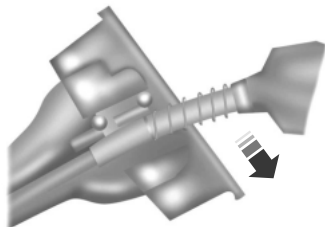
WARNING

-  The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

When fueling your vehicle:

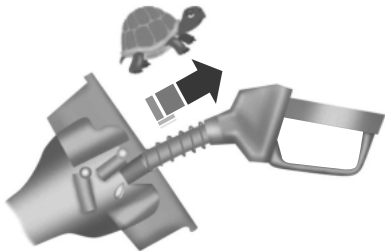
1. Put your vehicle in park (P) and switch the ignition off.
2. Open the fuel filler door.

Fuel and Refueling



E156032

3. Slowly insert the fuel filler nozzle fully into the fuel system, and leave the nozzle fully inserted until you are done pumping. Hold handle higher during insertion for easier access.



E154765

4. Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Note: A fuel spillage concern may occur if overfilling the fuel tank. Do not overfill the tank. The fill pipe is equipped with a drain hole. Excess fuel due to overfill may drain through the drain hole and drip onto the ground.

If the fuel fill inlet was not properly closed, a service engine warning lamp may appear on the instrument cluster.

At the next opportunity, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park (P).
2. Open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening.
3. Insert either the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel provided with the vehicle several times to allow the inlet to close properly. This will dislodge any debris preventing the inlet from sealing.

If this action corrects the problem, the message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after 4 or more hours with the engine off) followed by city or highway driving. Continuing to drive with the message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

Note: The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.

Fuel and Refueling

Empty reserve is the amount of fuel remaining in the tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty. Do not rely on this fuel for driving. The usable capacity of the fuel tank is the amount of fuel that can be put into the tank after the gauge indicates empty. The advertised capacity is the total fuel tank size – it is the combined usable capacity plus the empty reserve.

Filling the Tank

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period); a more accurate measurement is obtained after 2000 miles - 3000 miles (3200 kilometers - 4800 kilometers). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three to five tank fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Calculate fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons used (For Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled).

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures mean lower fuel economy.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

WARNINGS



Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.



Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Fuel and Refueling

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter that will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use parts other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements, or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be the equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with an on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction.

Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate.

Examples of temporary malfunctions are:

- the vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly
- poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly
- the fuel fill inlet may not have been properly closed See **Refueling** (page 166).
- driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

Fuel and Refueling

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, you may need to have the vehicle serviced. See On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, your vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the

ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system monitors the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you may need to perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

Drive on an expressway or highway for a steady 15 minutes, followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you will have to repeat the above driving cycle.

Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure your vehicle is in park (P). Turn the ignition off whenever you leave your vehicle.



Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Push Button Shift Transmission

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic transmission. The shift buttons are located on the instrument panel next to the MyLincoln Touch™ system. The gears are selected by pressing and releasing the **PRNDS** buttons.



E146223

Every time a gear is selected, the selected button will light up. You will also see the gear selected appear in the instrument cluster.



E155989

Understanding the Positions of your Electronic Transmission

Note: Always come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of park (P).

Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Press and release the button on the instrument panel of the gear you want to select.
3. The gearshift button you select will illuminate and the selected gear will appear in the instrument cluster.
4. Release the brake pedal and your transmission will remain in the selected gear.

Note: If you attempt to leave your vehicle while it is in gear, the vehicle will automatically shift into park (P). Safety belt and door monitors determine your intent and make the shift for you. During this time, a **Transmission not in Park** message will appear in the information display screen prompting you to make the shift.

Transmission

Note: To put your vehicle in gear with the door open, perform steps 1-4. See the **Automatic Return to Park** section in this chapter for more information on this feature.

Park (P)

With the transmission in park (P), your vehicle locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from turning. Always come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of park (P). An audible chime sounds once you select park (P).

When the ignition is turned off, the vehicle will automatically shift into park (P). If the ignition is turned off while the vehicle is moving, it will first shift into neutral (N) until a slow enough speed is reached. The vehicle will then shift into park (P) automatically.

Automatic Return to Park

Note: This feature will not operate when your vehicle is in Stay in Neutral mode or neutral tow.

Your vehicle has a safety feature that will automatically shift your vehicle into park (P) when any of the following conditions occur:

- You turn the ignition off
- You open the driver's door with your safety belt unlatched
- Your safety belt is unlatched while the driver's door is open

If you turn the ignition off while your vehicle is moving, your vehicle will first shift into neutral (N) until it slows down enough to shift into park (P) automatically.

Note: If you have waited an extended period of time, (2-15 minutes) before starting your vehicle, unlatching your safety belt will cause this feature to activate, even with the driver's door closed.

Note: This feature may not work properly if the door ajar switch is malfunctioning. If your door ajar indicator does not illuminate when you open the driver's door or the indicator illuminates with the driver's door closed, see your authorized dealer.

Reverse (R)

With the transmission in reverse (R), your vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

Neutral (N)

With the transmission in neutral (N), you can start your vehicle and it is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

Stay in Neutral mode

Stay in Neutral mode allows your vehicle to stay in neutral (N) when you exit the vehicle. Your vehicle must be stationary to enter this mode.

To enter Stay in Neutral mode:

1. Press the neutral (N) button on your shifter assembly.
2. The message **Press N to enter Stay in Neutral mode** will appear in your information display screen.
3. Press the neutral (N) button again to enter Stay in Neutral mode.

Transmission

The message **Stay in Neutral mode engaged** will appear in your information display screen when your vehicle has entered Stay in Neutral mode.

Note: *During this mode the **N** button will flash continuously and your instrument cluster will display N as the selected gear.*

Exiting Stay in Neutral mode

To disable Stay in Neutral mode select another gear. See the **Putting the Vehicle in Gear** for instructions on how to do this.

Entering a Carwash

Note: *Always put your vehicle in Stay in Neutral mode when entering an automatic car wash. Failure to do this could result in vehicle damage not covered by warranty.*

Drive (D)

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy.

Sport (S)

Putting the vehicle in sport (S):

- Provides additional engine braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This will increase engine RPM during engine braking
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy
- Provides gear selection more quickly and at higher engine speeds

SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission

Your SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears manually.

Paddle Shifters

With your vehicle in drive (D), the paddle shifters provide temporary manual control. They allow you the ability to shift gears quickly, without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

You can achieve extensive manual control by pressing the sport (S) button.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (–) to downshift.



Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart:

Transmission

Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)		
Gear Upshift		mph (km/h)
From	To	
1	2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2	3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3	4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4	5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5	6	50 mph (80 km/h)

The instrument cluster will display your currently selected gear.



E155990

The transmission will automatically upshift if your engine speed is too high or downshift if your engine speed is too low.

Note: *The system will stay in manual control until you make another shift button selection. For example, drive (D).*

Brake-Shift Interlock Override


WARNINGS




Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

Transmission

WARNINGS

 When doing this procedure, you will be taking the vehicle out of park which means the vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

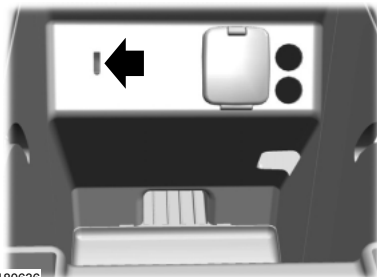
 If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

Note: See your authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

Note: For some markets this feature is disabled.

Use the brake-shift interlock override to move your transmission from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a dead battery.

1. Apply the parking brake and turn your ignition off before performing this procedure.



E180636

2. Locate your brake-shift interlock access slot. The slot is located in your center console storage bin. The access slot does not have a label.

Note: Make sure that you correctly identify the access hole as not to damage the media hub.

3. Using a tool, press and hold the brake shift interlock switch. The shift buttons on the instrument panel will flash when your vehicle is in override mode.
4. With the override switch still held, press the **N** (Neutral button) to shift from park.
5. Release the override button.

6. Your vehicle will remain in Stay in Neutral mode for wrecker towing purposes or can be shifted to the desired gear and driven (if possible).

7. Release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature increases durability and provides consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm or soft shifts. This operation will not affect function or durability of your transmission and is normal. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation. Additionally, the strategy must be relearned whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: Do not rock your vehicle if your engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to your transmission may occur.

Transmission

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to your transmission and tires may occur, or your engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you can help rock your vehicle out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

USING ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

Note: When a system malfunction is present, a warning message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 117). This means the system is not functioning correctly and only front-wheel drive is available. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: When the system overheats and switches to front-wheel drive, a warning message appears in the information display. This may occur if you operate your vehicle in extreme high load conditions or with excessive wheel spin (for example, deep sand). To resume all-wheel drive function, stop your vehicle in a safe location and turn off the ignition. When the system cools, normal all-wheel drive function will return. The information display indicates, for about five seconds, this return.

Note: When using the spare tire, a warning message may appear in the information display. This message turns off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced road tire and you switch on the ignition.

Note: Re-install the repaired tire or replace the tire as soon as possible. Different tire sizes between the front and rear axles can cause system damage, or turn off the all-wheel drive.

This system anticipates wheel spin and transfers power to the rear wheels before the spin occurs. Even when wheel spin is not occurring, the system is continuously adjusting power distribution to the wheels, in an attempt to improve straight line and cornering, both on and off road.

The system automatically turns on every time you switch on the ignition.

The all-wheel drive system does not require maintenance.

The all-wheel drive system gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than moderate sand, snow, mud or rough roads could subject it to excessive stress and heat. This could result in system damage. Your vehicle warranty will not cover this damage.



E142669

The information display indicates the power distribution between the front and rear wheels. The more the area is filled the more power is being distributed to that wheel.

Driving in Special Conditions With All-Wheel Drive

All-wheel drive vehicles are capable of driving on moderate sand, snow, mud and rough roads. All-wheel drive has operating characteristics that are somewhat different from two-wheel drive, both on and off the freeway.

Note: It may be useful to switch the traction control off. This allows for more wheel spin and engine torque in certain off road conditions or if your vehicle becomes stuck.

All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

When driving at slow speeds off road under high load conditions, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the air conditioning may cycle on and off to prevent the engine from overheating.

Basic Operating Principles

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds that can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- When driving your vehicle on surfaces made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice proceed with care.

If Your Vehicle leaves the Road

If your vehicle leaves the road, reduce your vehicle speed and avoid severe braking. Once you have reduced your vehicle speed, ease your vehicle back onto the road. Do not turn the steering wheel sharply while returning your vehicle to the road.

It may be safer to stay on the shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the road. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.

It may be less risky to strike small objects, such as freeway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt an abrupt dangerous direction change. Remember, your primary concern should be your safety and the safety of others.

Emergency Maneuvers

If you must make a sudden emergency direction change, avoid over-driving your vehicle. Turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as you need to avoid the emergency. Apply smooth pressure to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal as needed. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration and braking changes. Abrupt changes could increase the risk of vehicle roll over, loss of vehicle control and personal injury. Use all available road surface to bring your vehicle to under control.

In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.

Your vehicle responds differently to steering, accelerating and braking on different road surfaces when changing from one type of surface to another.

Sand

When driving over sand, avoid driving at excessive speeds. This will cause your vehicle momentum to work against you. Your vehicle could become stuck that may require assistance from another vehicle. Remember, if you proceed with caution you may be able to back out the way you came.

Do not drive in deep sand for an extended period. This will cause the all-wheel drive system to overheat. You will see a warning message in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 117).

All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

To resume operation, switch the ignition off and allow the system to cool down for a minimum of 15 minutes. After the system has cooled down, you will see a brief message display in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 117).

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Tips when driving over sand:

- Keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail.
- Shift to a lower gear.
- Apply the accelerator slowly.
- Drive steadily through the terrain.
- Avoid excessive wheel spin.
- Avoid reducing the tire pressures.

Mud and Water

Mud

Avoid sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off excess mud stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Water

Drive slowly through high water. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth and avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims. If the ignition system gets wet, your vehicle may stall.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes will not stop your vehicle as quickly as dry brakes. Apply light pressure to the brake pedal while slowly moving the vehicle to dry the brakes.

Note: *Driving through deep water may damage the transmission. If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and power transfer unit lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.*

Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, always try to drive straight up or straight down the sloping terrain.

Note: *To maintain traction and avoid possibly rolling your vehicle, avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. When you drive on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over a hill without first seeing what is on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Start climbing a steep slope or hill in a low gear rather than downshifting to a low gear from a high gear after you have started your climb. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If your vehicle stalls, do not try to turn around. Turning could cause the vehicle to roll over. Instead, reverse back to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle.




E143949

To avoid brake overheating, come down a hill in the same gear you used to go up the hill. Do not come down in neutral. Move the transmission selector lever to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes. Apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.

Driving on Snow and Ice

WARNING

 If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

Note: Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.

In snow and ice, all-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles but can still skid. When driving on snowy or icy roads, should you start to slide, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

On snow and ice, avoid suddenly applying power and avoid quick change of direction. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a stop.

Avoid sudden braking. An all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice. However, an all-wheel drive vehicle will not stop any faster, as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident to road conditions.

Make sure that you allow sufficient distance between your vehicle and other vehicles for stopping. On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual, and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, steadily apply the brake. Your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 182).

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

If your vehicle becomes stuck in mud or snow, shift between forward and reverse gears, and, in a steady pattern, stop between shifts. Press lightly on the accelerator with each shift. Rocking your vehicle this way may dislodge your vehicle.

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.*

Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle provides predictable performance whether your vehicle is loaded or empty. For this reason, we recommend that you do not make modifications to your vehicle (lift kits or stabilizer bars) or use replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

We recommend that you use caution when your vehicle has either a high load or device (ladder or luggage racks). Modifications to your vehicle that raise the center of gravity may cause your vehicle to tip if you should lose vehicle control.

Failure to maintain your vehicle correctly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities, and adversely affect you and your passenger's safety. We recommend that you frequently inspect your vehicle's chassis components if your vehicle is subject to off-road use.

Brakes

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning the Alloy Wheels** (page 306).



See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 106).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake rapidly by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal, and can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when you turn the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.



If the brake warning lamp illuminates when you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

Brakes


The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake replaces the conventional handbrake. The operating switch is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

WARNING


 Always set the parking brake and leave your vehicle with the transmission in position **P**.

Note: When you apply the electric parking brake in certain conditions, for example on a steep hill, the electric parking brake may reapply the brakes within three to ten minutes.

Note: You may notice various noises when you apply and release the electric parking brake. This is normal and no cause for concern.

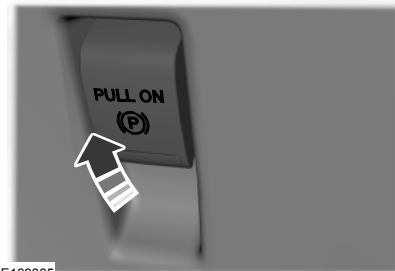
Applying the electric parking brake

WARNING

 If the brake system warning lamp does not illuminate or flashes, there could be a problem with your electric parking brake. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Note: The brake system warning lamp will illuminate for ten seconds if you have turned the ignition off after the electric parking brake has been applied, or the electric parking brake has been applied after the ignition has been turned off.

Note: The electric parking brake will not automatically apply. You must apply the electric parking brake using the electric parking brake switch.



E169085


Pull the switch to apply the electric parking brake.


The brake system warning lamp will illuminate to confirm that the electric parking brake has been applied. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 104).

Brakes

Applying the electric parking brake when the vehicle is moving

WARNINGS

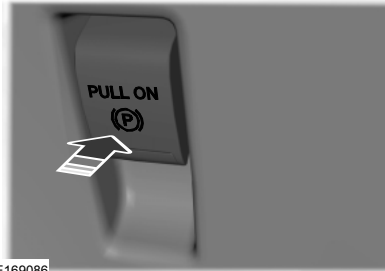
 Applying the electric parking brake while moving will result in use of the anti-lock braking system. Do not use the electric parking brake system when the vehicle is moving unless the normal brake system is unable to stop the vehicle.

 With the exception of emergency conditions (for example, the brake pedal does not work or is blocked), do not apply the electric parking brake while the vehicle is moving. On bends, or poor road surfaces or weather conditions, emergency braking can cause the vehicle to skid out of control or off the road.

If you apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, the brake system warning lamp will illuminate and a warning chime will sound. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 104).

If your vehicle speed is above 4 mph (6 km/h), the braking force is applied as long as the switch is applied. Release or press the switch or press the accelerator pedal to stop the braking force.


Releasing the electric parking brake



You can release the electric parking brake either manually by pressing the bottom of the switch or automatically.

Manual release

WARNING

 If the brake system warning light remains illuminated or flashes after you have released the parking brake, there could be a problem with your braking system. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

You can manually release the electric parking brake by turning the ignition on, pressing the brake pedal and then pressing the electric parking brake switch down.

When the electric parking brake is released, the brake system warning lamp will turn off.

Driving with a Trailer

Depending on the grade and the weight of the trailer, your vehicle and trailer may roll backwards slightly when you start on a slope. To prevent this from happening, do the following:

Brakes

1. Pull the switch and hold it in this position.
2. Drive your vehicle, then release the switch when you notice that the engine has developed sufficient driving force.

Automatic release - drive away release

Note: *The driver door must be closed and the driver safety belt must be fastened before this feature will operate.*

Note: *If the electric parking brake warning lamp stays illuminated, the electric parking brake will not automatically release. You must release the electric parking brake using the electric parking brake switch.*

Note: *The engine must be running and the accelerator pedal must be pressed before the drive away release feature will operate.*

The brake system warning lamp will go off to confirm that the electric parking brake has been released.

Note: *The electric parking brake drive away release makes starting on a hill easier. This feature will release the parking brake automatically when the vehicle has sufficient drive force to move up the hill. To assure drive away release when starting uphill, press the accelerator pedal quickly.*

Battery With No Charge

WARNING



You will not be able to apply or release the electric parking brake if the battery is low or has no charge.

If the battery is low or has no charge, use jumper cables and a booster battery.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and put the transmission in park (P).

WARNINGS



You must remain in your vehicle once you have activated the system.



During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



If the engine is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected, the system will be deactivated.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, (for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space).

The system will activate automatically on any slope that will cause significant vehicle rollback.

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will activate automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for about two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will release automatically.

Traction Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

In certain situations for example, stuck in snow or mud, turning the traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power. Depending on the type of system you have on your vehicle, you can either turn the system off using the information display or by pressing the button.

Switching the System Off Using the Information Display Controls (If Equipped)

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 111).

Switching the System Off Using a Switch (If Equipped)

The button is located in the instrument panel. Press the button. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the button again to return the system to normal mode.

When you switch the traction control system off, stability control remains fully active.

System Indicator Lights and Messages

WARNING



If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac system was not manually disabled through the information display. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



The stability control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates the stability system.



The stability control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you turn the traction control system off.

Traction Control

When you turn the traction control system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

Stability Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS



Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

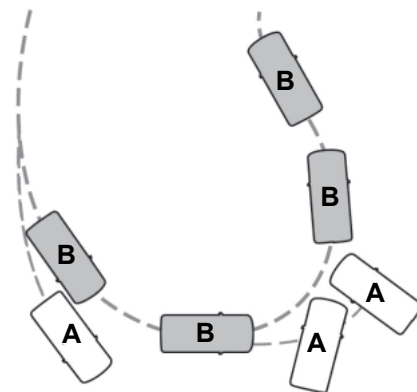


Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control

WARNINGS

of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac system activates, **SLOW DOWN**.

The AdvanceTrac with Roll Stability Control system helps you keep control of your vehicle when on a slippery surface. The electronic stability control portion of the system helps avoid skids and lateral slides and roll stability control helps avoid a vehicle rollover. The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction. See **Using Traction Control** (page 187).



E72903

- A Vehicle without AdvanceTrac with RSC skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with AdvanceTrac with RSC maintaining control on a slippery surface.

USING STABILITY CONTROL


AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®)

The system automatically activates when you start your vehicle. The AdvanceTrac with RSC system cannot be completely turned off, but the electronic stability control and roll stability control portions of the system are disabled when the transmission is in position **R**. You can turn off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 187).


Parking Aids


PARKING AID

WARNINGS


 To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section.

Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at parking speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

 To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in R (Reverse) and when using the sensing system.

 This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNINGS

 Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *When a trailer is connected to your vehicle the Rear Sensing System can detect the trailer and provide warnings. It is suggested that the driver disables the Rear Sensing System when a trailer is connected to your vehicle to prevent these warnings.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with MyKey™, it is possible to prevent turning the sensing system off. See MyKey™ (page 62).*

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of the bumper area. The system turns on automatically whenever the ignition is switched on.

When receiving a detection warning, the radio volume is reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio volume returns to the previous level.

The system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once the transmission is shifted into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 111).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow the driver to switch the faulted system on. See **Information Messages** (page 117).

Parking Aids

Rear Sensing System

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in reverse (R). As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is fewer than 10 in (25 cm) away, the warning sounds continuously. If a stationary or receding object is detected farther than 10 in (25 cm) from the side of your vehicle, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.



E130178

Coverage area of up to 6 feet (2 meters) from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

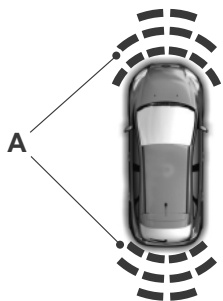
The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R):

- and moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- but not moving, and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- and moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Front Sensing System

The front sensors are active when the gearshift is in any position other than park (P) or neutral (N) and your vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).

Parking Aids



E130382

- A Coverage area of up to 27 inches (70 centimeters) from the front of your vehicle and about 6–14 inches (15–35 centimeters) to the side of the front end of your vehicle. Refer to the reverse sensing section for details on coverage area.

The system sounds an audible warning when obstacles are near either bumper in the following manner:

- Objects detected by the front sensors are indicated by a high-pitched tone from the front radio speakers.
- Objects detected by the rear sensors are indicated by a lower pitched tone from the rear radio speakers.
- The sensing system reports the obstacle which is closest to the front or rear of your vehicle. For example, if an obstacle is 24 in (60 cm) from the front of your vehicle and, at the same time, an obstacle is only 16 in (40 cm) from the rear of your vehicle, the lower pitched tone sounds.
- An alternating warning sounds from the front and rear if there are objects at both bumpers that are closer than 10 in (25 cm).

For specific information on the reverse sensing portion of the system, refer to that section.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (If Equipped)

WARNING



Designed to be a supplementary park aid, this system may not work in all conditions. This system cannot replace the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is responsible for avoiding hazards and maintaining a safe distance and speed, even when the system is in use.

Note: *The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.*

Note: *Whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, you need to drive your vehicle a short distance and your speed must exceed 12.4 mph (20 km/h) so the system can recalibrate the steering angle data.*

Parking Aids

The system detects an available parallel parking space and automatically steers your vehicle into the space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly instructs you to park the vehicle.

The system may not function correctly if something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (a pedestrian or cyclist) or if the edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached a foreign object (bike rack or trailer) to the front or rear of your vehicle or attached close to the sensors
- You have attached an overhanging object (surfboard) to the roof
- The front bumper or side sensors are damaged or obstructed by a foreign object (front bumper cover)
- A mini-spare tire is in use

Using Active Park Assist



Press the button located on the right side of the center stack.

The touchscreen displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to indicate which side of your vehicle you want the system to search.

Note: *If the direction indicator is not on, the system automatically searches on the vehicle's passenger side.*



Parking Aids

When the system finds a suitable space, the touchscreen displays a message and a tone sounds. Slow down, continue moving forward and stop when another tone sounds and a message displays on the touchscreen (at approximately position A), then follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the maneuver.

Note: Active park assist may not detect vehicles with overhanging loads (a bus or a truck), street furniture and other items. You must make sure the selected space is suitable for parking.

Note: You should drive your vehicle as parallel to the other vehicles as possible while passing a parking space.

Note: The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if the vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).

Note: If driven above approximately 20 mph (35 km/h), the touchscreen shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.

Automatic Steering into a Parking Space

Note: If your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.

When you shift the transmission into Reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. Indicated by tones, instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space, display on the touchscreen.



Parking Aids

When you think your vehicle has enough space in front and behind it, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a touchscreen display message and a tone), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When automatic steering is finished, the touchscreen displays a message and a tone sounds, indicating the completion of the active park assist process. The driver is responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before putting the transmission in Park (P).

Deactivating the Park Assist Feature

Manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the active park assist button.
- Grabbing the steering wheel.
- Driving above approximately 50 mph (80 km/h) for 10 seconds during an active park search.
- Driving above 6 mph (10 km/h) during automatic steering.
- Turning off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated on a slippery or loose surface.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.
- Something touches the steering wheel.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message is displayed, followed by a tone. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

Park Out Assist (If Equipped)

WARNING



Designed to be a supplementary park aid, this system may not work in all conditions. This system cannot replace the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is responsible for avoiding hazards and maintaining a safe distance and speed, even when the system is in use.

Note: *The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.*

The system determines the clearance to the front and rear of your vehicle and automatically steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly instructs you to enter traffic.

The system may not function correctly if something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (a pedestrian or cyclist) or if the edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).

Parking Aids

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached a foreign object (bike rack or trailer) to the front or rear of your vehicle or attached close to the sensors.
- You have attached an overhanging object (surfboard) to the roof.
- The front bumper or side sensors are damaged or obstructed by a foreign object (front bumper cover).
- A mini-spare tire is in use.

Using Park Out Assist



While your vehicle is at rest in a parallel parking space, press the button located on the right side of the center stack.

The touchscreen displays a message requesting an indication of direction. Use the direction indicator to signal which side of your vehicle you want to exit the parking space.

Note: *If there is no vehicle in front of you, the Park Out Assist feature cannot be activated.*

Automatic Steering out of a Parking Space

The system determines a suitable clearance to the front and rear of your vehicle. The touchscreen displays a message to shift to Reverse (R), Drive (D) or Sport (S).

When you shift the transmission into R (Reverse), D (Drive) or S (Sport), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself to exit the space. If there is not sufficient clearance to the vehicle in front of you, the system displays instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space. Parking Aid is enabled to avoid contact to the neighboring vehicles.

When automatic steering is finished, the touchscreen displays a message informing you to take control and a tone sounds, indicating the completion of the Park Out Assist process.

Note: *The driver is responsible for checking traffic conditions at all times.*

Deactivating the Park Out Assist Feature

Manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the active park assist button.
- Grabbing the steering wheel.
- Driving above 6 mph (10 km/h) during automatic steering.
- Turning off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated on a slippery or loose surface.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.
- Something touches the steering wheel.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message is displayed, followed by a tone. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

Parking Aids

Troubleshooting the System

The system does not look for a space
The traction control system may be off
The transmission is in Reverse (R); your vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space

The system does not offer a particular space
Something may be contacting the front bumper or side sensors
There is not enough room on both sides of your vehicle in order to park
There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space
Your vehicle is farther than 6.5 ft (2.0 m) from the parking space
Your vehicle is closer than 16 in. (40 cm) from neighboring parked vehicles
The transmission is in R (Reverse); your vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space

Parking Aids

The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space

Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the transmission (rolling forward when Reverse [R] is selected)

An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning your vehicle properly

Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned correctly

You pulled your vehicle too far past the parking space. The system performs best when you drive the same distance past the parking space

The tires may not be installed or maintained correctly (not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes)

A repair or alteration has changed detection capabilities


A parked vehicle has a high attachment (salt sprayer, snowplow, moving truck bed, etc.)

The parking space length or position of parked objects changed after your vehicle passed


The temperature around your vehicle changes quickly (driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash)


REAR VIEW CAMERA (if Equipped)

WARNINGS


 The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNINGS

 Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

 Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.

WARNINGS

 Use caution when using the rear video camera and the luggage compartment door is ajar. If the luggage compartment door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the luggage compartment door is ajar.

Parking Aids

WARNINGS



Use caution when turning camera features on or off. Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E142435

The camera is located on the luggage compartment door.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

Note: *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment is ajar, no rear view camera features will display.*

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing behind your vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear once you connect the trailer tow connector.*

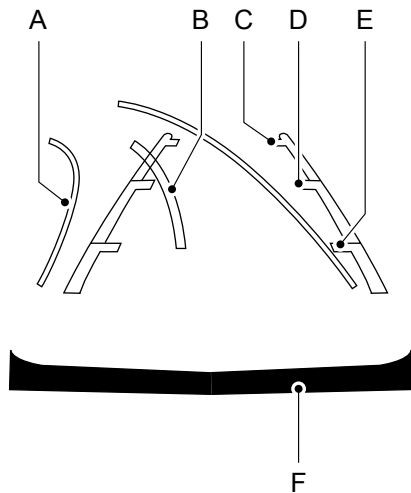
The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

Camera Guidelines

Note: *Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Parking Aids



- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. When your steering wheel position is straight, the active guidelines are not visible.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

E142436

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone

Manual Zoom

WARNING



When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle is not shown. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Parking Aids

Camera System Settings

To access any of the rear view camera system settings, make the following selections in the multifunctional display when the transmission is not in reverse (R):

- Menu > Vehicle > Camera Settings

Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).
- 10 seconds of time elapse.

Cruise Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

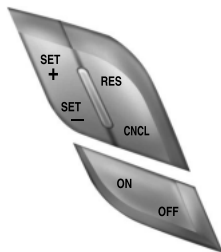


Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on winding roads or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes. Change down a gear to assist the system in maintaining the set speed. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

Note: Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed while driving uphill.



E145976

The cruise controls are located on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release **ON**.



The indicator appears in the instrument cluster.

Setting a Speed

1. Accelerate to the desired speed.

2. Press and release **SET+**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator changes colors in the instrument cluster.

Changing the Set Speed

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, you will return to the speed that you previously set.

- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select km/h in your information display, the set speed change in approximately 0.6 mph (1 km/h) increments. When you select mph in your information display, the set speed changes in approximately 1.0 mph (1.61 km/h) increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.

Cruise Control

Canceling the Set Speed

Press **CNCL** or tap the brake pedal. You will not erase the set speed.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES**.


Switching Cruise Control Off

Note: You will erase the set speed if you switch the system off.







Press and release **OFF** or switch the ignition off.

USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

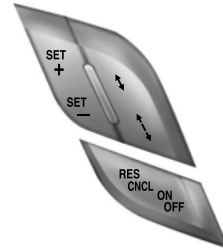
 Always pay close attention to changing road conditions, especially when using adaptive cruise control. Adaptive cruise control cannot replace attentive driving. Failing to follow any of the warnings below or failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

WARNINGS

-  Adaptive cruise control is not a crash warning or avoidance system.
-  Adaptive cruise control does not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6.2 mph (10 km/h).
-  Adaptive cruise control does not detect pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
-  Adaptive cruise control does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.
-  Do not use the adaptive cruise control when entering or leaving a highway, in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.
-  Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, rain, spray or snow.

Note: It is your responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and control the vehicle at all times.

The system adjusts your speed to maintain a proper distance between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. You can select from one of four gap settings.



E145977

The controls for using your cruise control are located on the steering wheel.

Switching the System On

Press and release **ON**.



The information display shows the grey indicator light.



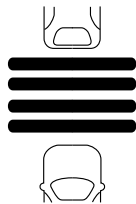
E164805

Cruise Control

The current gap setting and **SET** also shows.

Setting a Speed

1. Accelerate to the desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET+**. Memory stores the vehicle speed.
3. The information display shows a green indicator light, current gap setting and desired set speed.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.




E164805


5. A lead vehicle graphic illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

Following a Vehicle

WARNINGS

 When following a vehicle in front of you, your vehicle does not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does your vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

 Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Note: The brakes may emit a sound when the adaptive cruise control system is active.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. The distance setting is adjustable.

The system may provide slight temporary acceleration when you use your driver side directional indicator while following a lead vehicle, to aid in passing the vehicle.

The lead vehicle graphic illuminates.

The vehicle maintains a constant distance between the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of your lane or out of view.
- The vehicle speed falls below 12.4 mph (20 km/h).
- A new gap distance is set.

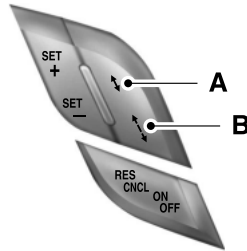
The system applies the brakes to slow the vehicle to maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front. The system applies only limited maximum braking. Press the brake pedal to override the system.

If the system predicts that its maximum braking level is insufficient, an audible warning sounds while the system continues to brake. A red warning bar appears on the windshield heads up display. Take immediate action to slow or stop the vehicle.

Cruise Control

Setting the Gap Distance

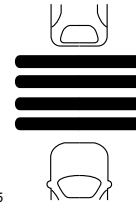
Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.



E145978

- A Gap decrease.
- B Gap increase.

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you by pressing the gap control.



E164805

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the graphic. Four gap distance settings are available.

Adaptive cruise control, distance between vehicle settings

Set speed mph (km/h)	Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles	Time gap, seconds	Distance gap yd (m)	Dynamic behavior
62 (100)	1	1	31 (28)	Sport.
62 (100)	2	1.4	43 (39)	Normal.
62 (100)	3	1.8	55 (50)	Normal.
62 (100)	4	2.2	67 (61)	Comfort.

Cruise Control

Each time you start the vehicle, the system selects the last chosen gap for the current driver.

Disengaging the System

Press the brake pedal or press **CNCL**. The last set speed displays in grey but does not erase.

Overriding the System

WARNING



Whenever you press the accelerator pedal and override the system, the system does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.

While you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.



When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the lead vehicle graphic does not show in the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

Changing the Adaptive Cruise Control Set Speed

- Accelerate or brake to the desired speed, then press and release **SET+**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-** until the desired set speed shows on the information display. The vehicle speed gradually changes to the selected speed.
- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. While in adaptive cruise control, the set speed changes in approximately 5.0 mph (8 km/h) increments if you have selected mph on your information display. In adaptive cruise control the set speed changes in approximately 3.1 mph (5 km/h) if you have selected km/h in your information display.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display while the system is active.

Resuming the Set Speed

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Press and release **RES**. The vehicle returns to the previously set speed. The set speed shows continuously in the information display while the system is active.

Low Speed Automatic Cancellation

The system is not functional at vehicle speeds below 12.4 mph (20 km/h). An audible alarm sounds and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Hilly Condition Usage

Note: *An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again when the brakes have cooled.*

Cruise Control

You should select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

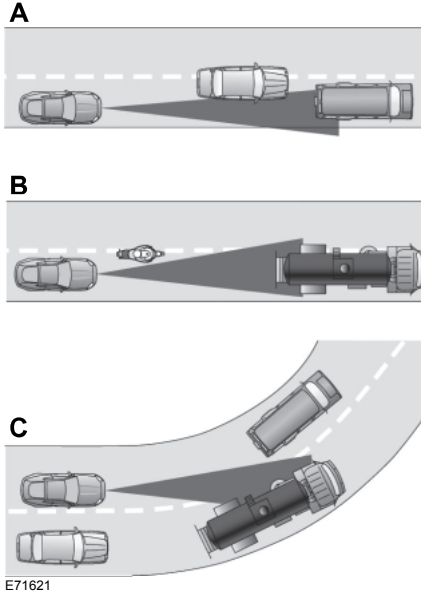
Switching the System Off

Note: *The set speed memory erases when you switch off the system.*

Press and release **OFF** or turn off the ignition.

Detection Issues

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.



Detection issues can occur:

- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and take action when necessary.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. See an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Cruise Control


System Not Available


Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

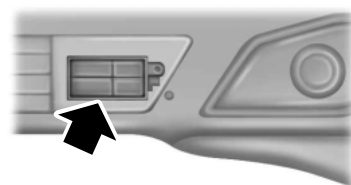
- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

Blocked Sensor

WARNINGS

 Do not use the system when towing a trailer with aftermarket trailer brake controls. Aftermarket trailer brakes do not function properly when you switch the system on because the brakes are electronically controlled. Failing to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

 Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



E145632

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is located behind a cover near the driver side of the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and do not function when something obstructs the radar signals. The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message displaying.

Cruise Control

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
You are in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles and no roadside objects.	Wait a short time or switch to normal cruise control.

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning and not be blocked. This can happen, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears or clears after a key cycle.

Switching to Normal Cruise Control

WARNING



Normal cruise control does not brake due to slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can manually change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.

Cruise Control



The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles and automatic braking is not active. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Driving Aids

DRIVER ALERT (If Equipped)

WARNING



The driver alert system is designed to aid you. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

Note: The system will store the on or off setting in the information display menu through ignition cycles.

Note: If enabled in the menu, the system will be active at speeds above 40 mph (64 km/h). When below the activation speed, the information display will inform you that the system is unavailable.

Note: The system works as long as one lane marking can be detected by the camera.

Note: If the camera is blocked or if the windshield is damaged, the system may not function.

Note: The system may not be available in poor weather or other low visibility conditions.

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that your driving alertness is reduced below a certain threshold, the system will alert you using a chime and a message in the information display.

Using Driver Alert

Switching the system on and off

You may switch the system on or off through the information display by selecting Settings then Driver Assist then Driver Alert in the menu. When activated, the system will monitor your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings, and other factors.

System Warnings

Note: The system will not issue warnings below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h).

The warning system is in two stages. At first the system issues a temporary warning that you need to take a rest. This message will only appear for a short time. If the system detects further reduction in driving alertness, another warning may be issued which will remain in the information display for a longer time. Press OK on the steering wheel control to clear the warning.

System Display

When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue a warning if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

The alertness level is shown by six steps in a colored bar.



E131358

Driving Aids

The current assessment of your alertness is within a typical range.



E131359

The current assessment of your alertness indicates that you should rest as soon as safely possible.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the color turns from green to yellow to red. The yellow position indicates the first warning is active and the red position indicates the second warning is active.

Note: *If you have recently received a warning; you should consider resting, even if the current assessment is with the typical range.*

Note: *If the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if your vehicle speed drops below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h), the alertness level will change to grey for a short time and the information display will inform you that the system is unavailable.*

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM (If Equipped)

WARNING



The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

Note: *The system works above 40 mph (64 km/h).*

Note: *The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.*

Note: *The system may not function if the camera is blocked or there is damage to the windshield.*

Note: *When Aid mode is on and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system will alert you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.*

The system detects unintentional drifting toward the outside of the lane and alerts or aids you to stay in the lane through the steering system and instrument cluster display. The system automatically detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior rear view mirror.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The system on or off setting is stored until it is manually changed, unless a MyKey® is detected. If the system detects a MyKey®, it defaults to on and the mode is set to alert.*

Driving Aids

Note: If a MyKey® is detected, pressing the button will not affect the on or off status of the system. You can only change the mode and intensity settings.

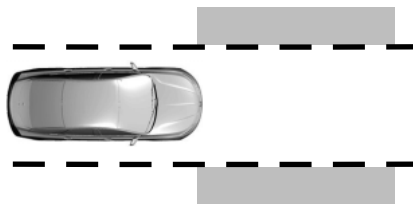


Press the button located on the left steering wheel stalk to switch the system on or off.

System Settings

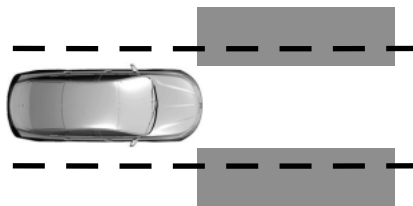
The system has two optional setting menus available. To view or adjust them, select Settings > Driver Assist > Lane Keeping Sys in the information display using the OK button on the steering wheel. The system stores the last known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you turn on the system.

Mode: This setting allows you to select which of the system features to enable.



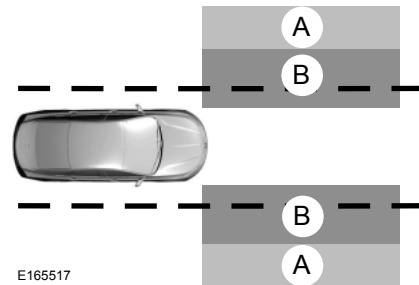
E165515

Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165516

Aid only – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165517

A Alert
B Aid

Alert + Aid – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the system will provide a steering wheel vibration.

Note: The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not indicate the exact zone coverage area.

Driving Aids

Intensity: This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. This setting is not valid for the aid mode.

- Low
- Medium
- High

System Display



E151660

When you turn the system on, an overhead graphic of a vehicle with lane markings will display in the information display. If you turn the system on and select aid mode, arrows will display along with the lane markings.

When you turn the system off, the lane marking graphics will not display.

Note: *If adaptive cruise control is enabled the overhead vehicle graphic may still be displayed.*

While the system is on, the color of the lane markings will change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side(s). This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- Your turn indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.

- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental conditions (significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain, fog), traffic conditions (following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane), or vehicle conditions (poor headlamp illumination).

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side(s).

Yellow: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

You can temporarily disable the system at any time by doing the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.

Driving Aids

- Using the turn signal indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.

Troubleshooting

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature
Sun is shining directly into the camera lens
Quick intentional lane change
Staying too close to the lane marking
Driving at high speeds in curves
Previous feature activation happened within the last one second
Ambiguous lane markings (mainly in construction zones)
Rapid transition from light to dark or vice versa
Sudden offset in lane markings
ABS or AdvanceTrac activation
Camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield
Driving too close to the vehicle in front of you
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa
Standing water on the road

Driving Aids

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
--

Faint lane markings (partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads)
--

Lane width too narrow or too wide

Camera not calibrated after a windshield replacement
--

Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads

Why does the vehicle not come back into the middle of the lane always, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?
--

High cross winds

Large road crown

Rough roads, grooves, shoulder drop-offs
--

Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure


If the tires have been exchanged (including snow tires), or the suspension has been modified
--

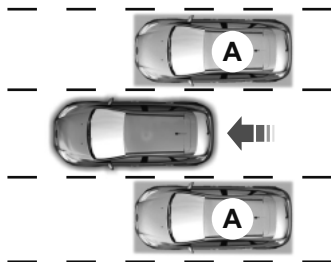
Driving Aids

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

WARNING

 To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.



E124788

The Blind Spot Information System aids you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 10 feet (3 meters) beyond the bumper. The system alerts you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone while driving.

Cross Traffic Alert warns you of vehicles approaching from the sides when the transmission is in Reverse (R).

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; nor detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails, trees, etc.). It only alerts you to vehicles in the blind zones.*

Note: *When a vehicle passes quickly through the blind zone, typically fewer than two seconds, the system does not trigger.*

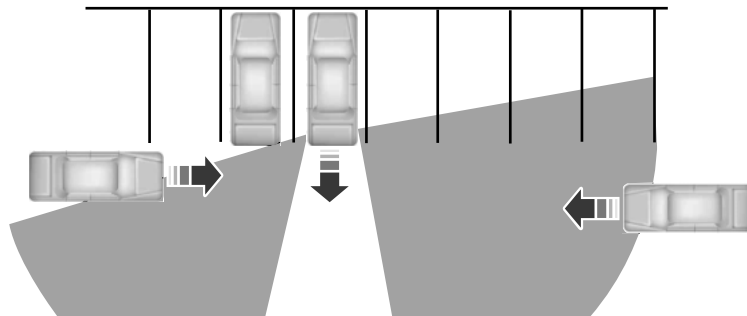
Using the Systems

The Blind Spot Information System turns on when you start the engine and you drive your vehicle forward above 3 mph (5 km/h); it remains on while the transmission is in Drive (D) and Neutral (N). If shifted out of Drive (D) or Neutral (N), the system enters cross traffic alert mode. Once shifted back into Drive (D), the Blind Spot Information System turns back on when you drive your vehicle above 3 mph (5 km/h).

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not function in Reverse (R) or Park (P) or provide any additional warning when a turn signal is on.*

Cross Traffic Alert detects approaching vehicles from up to 45 feet (14 meters) away though coverage decreases when the sensors are blocked. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

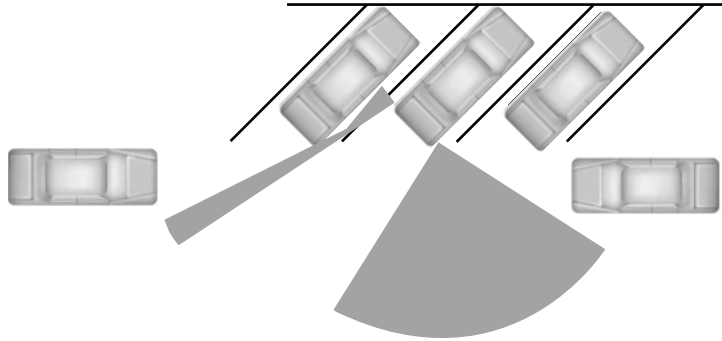
Driving Aids



E142440

In this first example, the left sensor is only partially obstructed; zone coverage is nearly maximized.

Driving Aids



E142441

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles. Here, the left sensor is mostly obstructed; zone coverage on that side is severely limited.

Driving Aids

System Lights and Messages



E142442

The Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert systems illuminate a yellow alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Note: *The alert indicator dims when the system detects nighttime darkness.*

Cross Traffic Alert also sounds a series of tones and a message appears in the information display indicating a vehicle is coming from the right or left. Cross Traffic Alert works with the reverse sensing system that sounds its own series of tones. See **Parking Aid** (page 191).

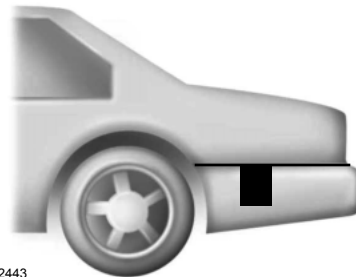
System Sensors

WARNING



Just prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and alerting the driver, the number of missed objects will increase. To help avoid injuries, **NEVER** use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.

Note: *It is possible to get a blockage warning with no blockage present; this is rare and known as a false blockage warning. A false blocked condition either self-corrects or clears after a key cycle.*



E142443

The system uses radar sensors that are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Do not allow mud, snow or bumper stickers to obstruct these areas, this can cause degraded system performance.

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, a message warning of a blocked sensor or low visibility will appear in the information display along with a warning indicator. You can clear the information display warning but the warning indicator will remain illuminated.

Driving Aids

When you remove a blockage, you can reset the system two ways:

- While driving, the system detects at least two objects.
- You cycle the ignition from on to off and then back on.

If the blockage is still present after the key cycle and driving in traffic, check again for a blockage.

Reasons for messages being displayed	
The radar surface is dirty or obstructed	Clean the fascia area in front of the radar or remove the obstruction.
The radar surface is not dirty or obstructed	Drive normally in traffic for a few minutes to allow the radar to detect passing vehicles so it can clear the blocked state.
Heavy rainfall or snowfall interferes with the radar signals	No action required. The system automatically resets to an unblocked state once the rainfall or snowfall rate decreases or stops. Do not use BLIS or Cross Traffic Alert in these conditions.

System Limitations

The Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert systems do have their limitations; situations such as severe weather conditions or debris build-up on the sensor area may limit vehicle detection.

The following are other situations that may limit the Blind Spot Information System:

- Certain maneuvering of vehicles entering and exiting the blind zone.
- Vehicles passing through the blind zone at very fast rates.
- When several vehicles forming a convoy pass through the blind zone.

The following are other situations that may limit the Cross Traffic Alert system:

- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects obstructing the sensors.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 15 mph (24 km/h).
- Driving in reverse faster than 3 mph (5 km/h).
- Backing out of an angled parking spot.

Driving Aids

False Alerts

Note: *If your vehicle has a factory equipped tow bar and it is towing a trailer, the sensors will detect the trailer and turn the Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert systems off to avoid false alerts. For non-factory equipped tow bars, you may want to turn the Blind Spot Information System off manually.*

There may be certain instances when there is a false alert by either the Blind Spot Information or the Cross Traffic Alert systems that illuminates the alert indicator with no vehicle in the coverage zone. Some amount of false alerts are normal; they are temporary and self-correct.

System Errors

If either system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the Blind Spot Information System telltale will illuminate and a message will appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 117).

All other system faults will display only with a message in the information display.

Switching the Systems Off and On

You can temporarily switch off one or both systems in the information display. See **General Information** (page 111). When you switch off the Blind Spot Information System, you will not receive alerts and the information display will display a system off message. The yellow alert indicator in the outside mirror will also flash twice. The system switches back on whenever you switch the ignition on.

You can also have one or both systems switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off, the system can only be switched back on at an authorized dealer.

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNING



The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Your vehicle has an electric power steering system. There is no fluid reservoir. No maintenance is required.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving, electric power steering assistance is lost. The steering system still operates and you can steer your vehicle manually. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Driving Aids

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort required for you to steer your vehicle. This increased effort prevents overheating and permanent damage to the steering system. You do not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually. Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- Correct tire pressures.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.*


Adaptive Learning

The electronic power steering system adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

COLLISION WARNING SYSTEM

Principle Of Operation (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

 This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does NOT automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle.

WARNINGS



The collision warning system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

Note: *The system does not detect, warn or respond to potential collisions with vehicles to the rear or sides of your vehicle.*

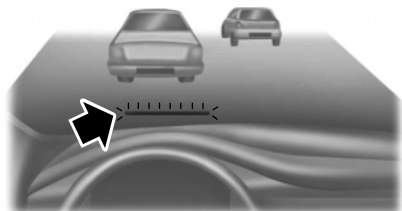
Note: *The collision warning system is active at speeds above approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).*



E156130

The system alerts you of certain collision risks. The system's sensor detects your vehicle's rapid approach to other vehicles traveling in the same direction as your vehicle.

Driving Aids



E156131

When your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, a red warning light flashes and a tone sounds.

The brake support system assists you in reducing any collision speed by pre-charging the brakes. If the risk of collision continues to increase after the audio-visual warning, the brake support prepares the brake system for rapid braking. The system does not automatically activate the brakes, but if the brake pedal is pressed even lightly, the brakes apply full stopping power.

Using the Collision Warning System

WARNING

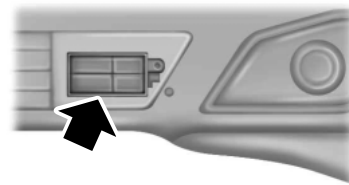


The collision warning system's brake support reduces collision speed only if you brake your vehicle before any collision. As in any typical braking situation, you must press your brake pedal.

You can use your information display control to adjust the warning system's sensitivity to any one of three possible settings. See **General Information** (page 111).

Note: *When possible, the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting. If warnings are too frequent, you can reduce your system's sensitivity. Reduced sensitivity causes fewer and later system warnings. See **General Information** (page 111).*

Blocked Sensors



E145632

If a blocked sensor message appears in the information display, dirt, water, or an object is blocking the sensor. The sensor is located behind a cover near the driver side of the lower grille. If anything blocks the sensor, your vehicle cannot see through the sensor, and the collision warning system will not work. Possible causes for the blocked sensor message and corrective actions are listed below.

Driving Aids

Cause	Action
The radar sensor cover in the grille is dirty or obstructed	Clean the radar sensor cover or remove the obstruction
The surface of the radar sensor cover is clean but the message remains in the display	Wait a short time. The radar may take several minutes to reset after you remove the obstruction
Heavy rain, spray, snow or fog in the air interferes with the radar signals	The collision warning system is temporarily disabled. Shortly after weather conditions improve, the collision warning system automatically reactivates
Swirling water, snow or ice on the road surface interferes with the radar signals	The collision warning system is temporarily disabled. Shortly after weather conditions improve, the collision warning system automatically reactivates

System Limitations

WARNING



The collision warning system's brake support only reduces collision speed if you first apply your brakes. You must brake as you would in any typical braking situation.

Due to the nature of radar technology, there may be certain instances where vehicles do not provide a collision warning. These include:

- Stationary vehicles or vehicles moving below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.
- Severe weather conditions (see blocked sensor section).
- Debris build-up on the grille near the headlamps (see blocked sensor section).
- Small distance to vehicle ahead.
- Large steering wheel and pedal movements (very active driving style).

Damage to the front end of the vehicle may alter the radar sensor's coverage area. This may result in missed or false collision warnings. Have an authorized dealer check your radar sensor for proper coverage and operation.

Driving Aids

DRIVE CONTROL (If Equipped)

LINCOLN DRIVE CONTROL

Lincoln Drive Control delivers the Lincoln driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems continuously monitor your driving inputs and the road conditions to optimize ride comfort, steering, handling, powertrain response and sound. You can preset your preferences for these systems within the information display. Lincoln Drive Control will respond to your preferences based on what gear position you select. This provides a single location to control multiple systems performance settings.

Lincoln Drive Control consists of the following systems:

- Continuously controlled damping dynamically adjusts the shock absorbers stiffness in real time to match the road surface and driver inputs. This system continuously monitors your vehicle's motion (roll, pitch, bounce), suspension position, load, speed, road conditions, and steering to adjust the suspension damping for optimal vehicle control.
- Electronically power-assisted steering adjusts steering effort and feel based on your vehicle speed and your inputs.
- Active noise control utilizes your vehicle electronics to enhance the acoustic experience.
- Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving.
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your inputs.
- Comfort – Provides a more relaxed driving experience, maximizing comfort. Your steering effort decreases and the suspension movement is more fluid. Comfort mode is ideal when you desire enhanced traveling comfort.
- Normal – Delivers a balanced combination of comfortable, controlled ride and confident handling. This mode provides an engaging drive experience and a direct connection to the road without sacrificing any of the composure demanded from a luxury vehicle.
- Sport – Provides a sportier driving experience. The suspension stiffens, with an emphasis on handling and control. The engine responds more directly to your inputs and takes on a more powerful tone. Sport mode is ideal for use during more spirited driving.

Note: *Active noise control is only available with EcoBoost™ engines.*

These systems have a range of modes which you can choose from in order to customize your ideal driving experience:

Using Lincoln Drive Control

You can configure which of the Drive Control modes are active when your vehicle is in Drive (D) or in Sport (S). The configuration remains active until modified from the main menu on the information display.

Driving Aids

To change your vehicle's Drive Control settings from the main menu on the information display:

1. Choose Settings.
2. Choose Vehicle.
3. Choose Drive Control.
4. Select the shift position you would like to configure, either **D** or **S**.
5. Choose from Comfort, Normal, or Sport modes as your preferred setting in D.
6. Choose from Normal or Sport modes as your preferred setting in S.

Settings in S:

- Handling in S - The suspension stiffens, with an emphasis on handling and control.
- Performance in S - The engine responds more directly to your inputs and takes on a more powerful tone.

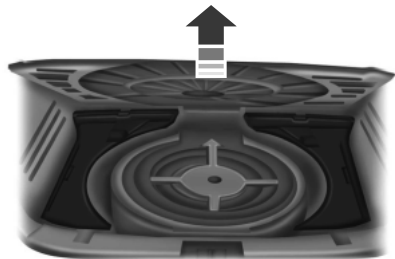
Note: *Not all settings may be available.*

Note: *Lincoln Drive Control has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. Certain types of system errors will gray out the mode selections within the information display, preventing you from changing states when the gear position is changed. Other types of errors will produce a temporary message that states Drive Control Malfunction. If either condition persists for multiple key cycles, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Load Carrying

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

Cargo Management System (If Equipped)




E142445


The system is located in the floor of the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

LUGGAGE COVERS

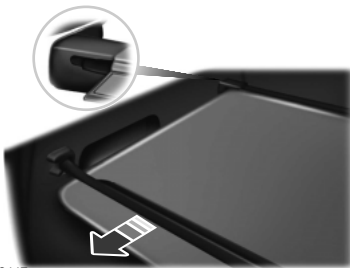
WARNINGS

 Make sure that the posts are properly latched in mounting features. The cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or accident if it is not securely installed.

WARNINGS

 Do not place any objects on the cargo area shade. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of your vehicle in a sudden stop or crash.

Use the cargo shade to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.



E142447

Insert the ends of the cargo shade into the mounting features located behind the rear seat on the rear trim panels to install the cargo shade.


To operate the cargo shade:

1. Pull the rear edge of the cargo shade rearward.

2. Secure both ends of the support rod into the retention slots located on the rear quarter trim panels.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

WARNING

 When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load is 50 pounds (22 kilograms) for vehicles with a panoramic roof, and 80 pounds (36 kilograms) for vehicles without a panoramic roof. Evenly distribute the load on the roof rack.

Load Carrying

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The intended design of the roof panel is not to directly carry a load.*

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

LOAD LIMIT

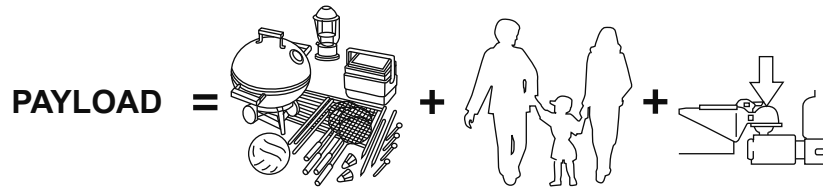
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer or both, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before

loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

Base Curb Weight - is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Curb Weight - is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



E143816

Load Carrying

Payload - is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built


by the assembly plant. If you install any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment on the vehicle, you must subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

Example only:

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION			
SEATING CAPACITY		TOTAL 5	FRONT 2 REAR 3
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : XXX kg or XXX lbs.			
TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	

E142516

WARNING

 The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

Load Carrying

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY | TOTAL 5 | FRONT 2 | REAR 3
 NOMBRE DE PLACES | TOTAL 5 | AVANT 2 | ARRIERE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 492 kg or 1085 lbs.
 Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 492 kg ou 1085 lbs.

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT AVANT	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
REAR ARRIERE	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T145/90R17	415 KPA, 60 PSI	

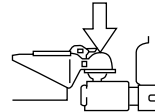
E142517

CARGO

=



+



E143817

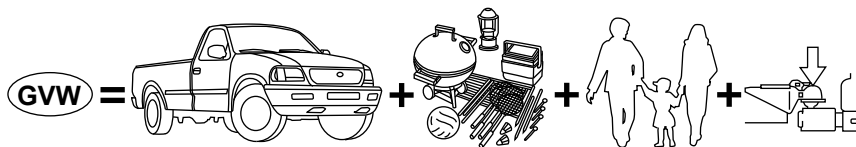
Load Carrying

Cargo Weight - includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight) - is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) - is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position. **The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.**

Note: For trailer towing information refer to the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* available at an authorized dealer.



E143818

GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) - is the Vehicle Curb Weight, plus cargo, plus passengers.


Load Carrying

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

- is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). It is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door

Example only:

hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position. **The Gross Vehicle Weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.									
DATE: XX/XX	GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG								
FRONT GAWR: XXXXL	REAR GAWR: XXXXLB								
XXXXKG	WITH	XXXXKG	WITH						
XXXXXX	TIRES	XXXXXX	TIRES						
XXXX.XX	RIMS	XXXX.XX	RIMS						
AT XXX kPa/XX	PSI COLD	AT XXX kPa/XX	PSI COLD						
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.									
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXX								
TYPE: XXX	XXXXX								
									
EXT PNT: XX	RC: XX	DSO:							
WB ¹	INT TR	TP/PS	R	AXLE	TR	SPR	XXXXX		
XXX	XX	X	XX	X	XX	XXX			
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXX-XX									

E142523

Load Carrying

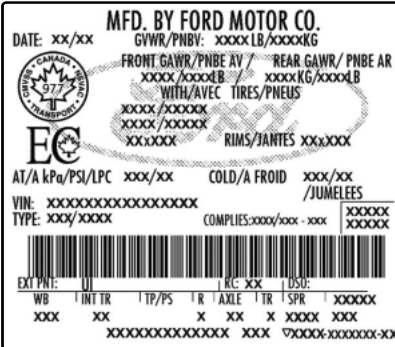
MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.
GVWR/PNBV: xxxxxLB/xxxxKG

FRONT GAWR/PNBE AV / REAR GAWR / PNBE AR
xxxxx/xxxxxB / xxxxxKG/xxxxxB
WITH/AVEC TIRES/PNEUS
xxxxx/xxxxxx
xxxxx/xxxxxx
xxxxxx RIMS/JANTES xxxxxxx

AT/A kPa/PSI/LPC xxx/x COLD/A FROID xxx/xx
/JUMEELES

VIN: xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx
TYPE: xxx/xxxxx COMPLIES:xxxx/xxx -xxx xxxxxx
xxxxxx

EXT PRI: | INT TR | TP/PS | R | AXLE | TR | SPR | | DSU: | |
xxx | xx | | x | xx | x | xxxxx | xxx |
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxx xxxxxxx-xxxxxx



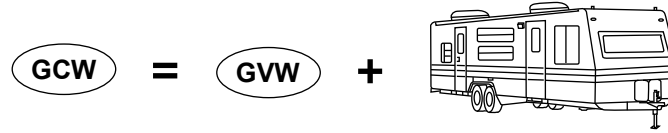
E142524

WARNING



Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

Load Carrying



E143819

GCW (Gross Combined Weight) - is the Gross Vehicle Weight plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating) - is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross

Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle. **The Gross Combined Weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.**

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight - is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with mandatory options, driver and front passenger weight (150 pounds [68 kilograms] each), no cargo weight (internal or external) and a tongue load of 10–15%

(conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer). Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight - refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

Examples: For a 5000 pound (2268 kilogram) conventional trailer, multiply 5000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 pounds (227 to 340 kilograms). For an 11500 pound (5216 kilogram) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1725 to 2875 pounds (782 to 1304 kilograms).

Load Carrying

WARNINGS



Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb.})$
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be: $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$ pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$ kilograms.

Load Carrying

*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be: $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$ pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$ kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be: $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$ pounds. Now you

have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$ kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position.

Towing

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNINGS



Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Your vehicle may have electrical items, such as fuses or relays, related to towing. See the **Fuses** chapter.

Your vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle.

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components periodically during, and after, any towing operation.

Load Placement

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.
- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- Select a tow bar with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight. Additional information regarding proper trailer loading and setting your vehicle up for towing is located in another chapter of this manual. See **Load Limit** (page 230). You can also find the information in the **RV & Trailer Towing Guide**, available at an authorized dealer.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL (If Equipped)

WARNING



Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

Towing

Note: This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.

Note: This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.

Note: In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.

This feature applies the vehicle brakes at individual wheels and, if necessary, reduces engine power. If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control light flashes. The first thing to do is slow the vehicle down, then pull safely to the side of the road and check for proper tongue load and trailer load distribution. See **Load Carrying** (page 229).

RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

Note: Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.

Note: Be sure to take into consideration trailer frontal area. Do not exceed 20 feet (1.86 meters) if your vehicle is not equipped with a towing package or 30 feet (2.79 meters) if your vehicle is equipped with a towing package.

Note: For high altitude operation, reduce the gross combined weight by 2% per 1000 feet (300 meters) starting at the 1000 foot (300 meter) elevation point.

Note: Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as the vehicle's electrical system may not include the wiring connector needed to activate electric trailer brakes.

Your vehicle may tow a trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your vehicle configuration on the following chart.

Powertrain	Maximum GCWR	Maximum trailer weight
2.0L GTDI FWD	7220 lb (3275 kg)	3000 lb (1361 kg)
2.0L GTDI AWD	7400 lb (3357 kg)	3000 lb (1361 kg)
2.3L GTDI AWD	6420 lb (2912 kg)	2000 lb (907 kg)

Towing

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

You can find information on load specification terms found on the tire label and Safety Compliance label as well as instructions on calculating your vehicle's load in the Load Carrying chapter. See **Load Limit** (page 230).

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

Distribute the trailer load so 10-15% of the total trailer weight is on the tongue.

Safety Chains

Note: *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

WARNING



Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 1500 pounds (680 kilograms) when loaded.

Towing

Trailer Lamps

WARNING



Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

When Towing a Trailer

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 miles (800 kilometers).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 miles (80 kilometers).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the gearshift in position **P** to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.

- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:
 1. Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
 2. Set your vehicle parking brake.
 3. Place the automatic transmission in position **P**.
 4. Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. (Chocks not included with vehicle.)

Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

Note: *Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water.*

Towing

Note: *Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after removing the trailer from the water.*

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

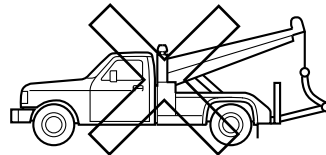
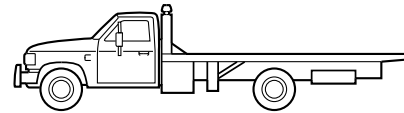
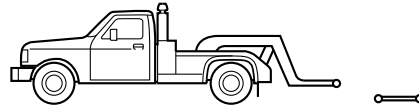
- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 inches (15 centimeters) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

It is acceptable to have your front-wheel drive vehicle towed from the front if using proper wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. When towing in this manner, the rear wheels can remain on the ground.

Towing

Front-wheel drive vehicles must have the front wheels placed on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

Towing an all-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, all-wheel drive system and vehicle.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

Emergency Towing

WARNING



If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

If your vehicle becomes inoperable (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle), it can be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You place the vehicle in Stay in Neutral mode. See **Placing Your Vehicle in Stay in Neutral Mode**. In addition, make sure to read the brake-shift interlock override procedure. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 171).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

Placing Your Vehicle in Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Press the **N** button on the shifter assembly.
2. When **Press N again to Enter Stay in Neutral Mode** appears in the information display, press the **N** button again.

Note: The message **Stay in Neutral Mode Engaged** appears in the information display when you successfully complete the procedure.

Note: Keeping the vehicle in Stay in Neutral mode eventually causes your vehicle battery to lose charge. Exit the mode as soon as safely possible.

Recreational Towing

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 135).

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. We designed these guidelines to prevent damage to your transmission.

Towing

Front-wheel drive vehicles **CANNOT** be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground) as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. You must place the front wheels on a two-wheel tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

All-wheel drive vehicles **CANNOT** be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground), as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

Driving Hints

BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 miles (480 kilometers). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Do not tow during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Your fuel economy is affected by several things, such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under, and how you maintain your vehicle.

You may improve your fuel economy by keeping these things in mind:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds without stopping.

- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

Avoid these actions; they reduce your fuel economy:

- Sudden accelerations or hard accelerations.
- Revving the engine before turning it off.
- Idle for periods longer than one minute.
- Warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Use the air conditioner or front defroster.
- Use the speed control in hilly terrain.

- Rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Drive a heavily loaded vehicle or tow a trailer.
- Carry unnecessary weight (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kilogram] of weight carried).
- Driving with the wheels out of alignment.

Conditions


- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars, light bars, running boards, ski racks or luggage racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- To maximize the fuel economy, drive with the tonneau cover installed (if equipped).
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 kilometers) of driving.

Driving Hints

- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.
- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Four-wheel-drive operation (if equipped) is less fuel efficient than two-wheel-drive operation.
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

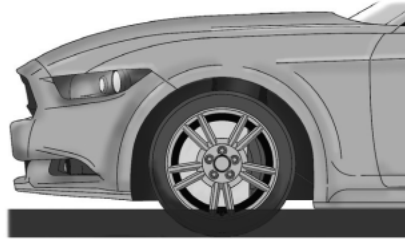
WARNING

 Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.




E176360


When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:


- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.


FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS

 Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.


 Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.


 Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.


 Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.


Driving Hints

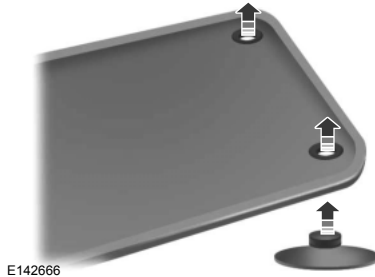
WARNINGS

 Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

 Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

 Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

 Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Roadside Emergencies

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Vehicles Sold In the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

If you ever need help on the road, the Lincoln Motor Company is there for you with nationwide, 24-hours-a-day, seven-days-a-week assistance.

The service is available:

- Throughout the life of the vehicle for original owners.
- For six years or 70,000 mi (112,654.08 km) (whichever comes first) within the extended powertrain warranty coverage period for subsequent owners.
- For the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner's Manual portfolio.

This complimentary Roadside Assistance program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and includes:

- A flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.

- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the client's responsibility).
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gal (7.5 L) of gasoline or 5.0 gal (18.9 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30.48 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall tow Lincoln eligible vehicles to the client's selling or preferred dealer within 100 mi (161 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest Lincoln dealer. If a client requests a tow to a selling or preferred dealer that is more than 100 mi (161 km) from the disablement location, the client shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 100 mi (161 km).

Roadside Assistance includes up to \$200 coverage for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles Sold In the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

United States Lincoln vehicle clients who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-521-4140.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest Lincoln dealership within 100 mi (161 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States Lincoln vehicle clients, call 1-800-521-4140. Ford Motor Company will ask you to submit your original receipts.

Roadside Emergencies

Vehicles Sold In Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

Canadian clients who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-387-9333.

Sykes Assistance Services Corporation administers the Roadside Assistance program. You must receive covered services in Canada or the continental United States. Coverage extends to vehicles that use public, non-seasonal, annually traveled roadways. Roadside Assistance coverage does not extend to vehicles involved in cross-country driving, logging, autocross and any other form of off-road use. Well maintained roads and surfaces help ensure safe travel for the Supplier, and allow their representatives to perform service as per the standard operating procedures.

In Remote Locations

If our supplier cannot take your vehicle by road to the nearest authorized dealership, transportation by rail or water may be necessary. The program covers a tow to the dock or rail terminal and also to the dealership at the end of the trip.

For rail or water transportation, however, contact your authorized dealer to confirm if you are eligible for additional coverage before you authorize or pay for the service.

Call the Lincoln Roadside Assistance at 1-800-387-9333 for additional information.

Vehicles Sold In Canada: Using Roadside Assistance

Canadian Roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the United States coverage. Please refer to your warranty information or visit our website at www.lincolncanada.com for information on Canadian services and benefits.

Canadian clients who need to obtain roadside information, call 1-800-387-9333 or visit our website at www.lincolncanada.com.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

Note: *If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.
- Press the button again to turn them off.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Roadside Emergencies

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to start the vehicle.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS



The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in personal injury or vehicle damage.



Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.



Use only an adequate-sized cable with insulated clamps.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: *Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.*

Note: *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*


Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.*

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Turn all accessories off.

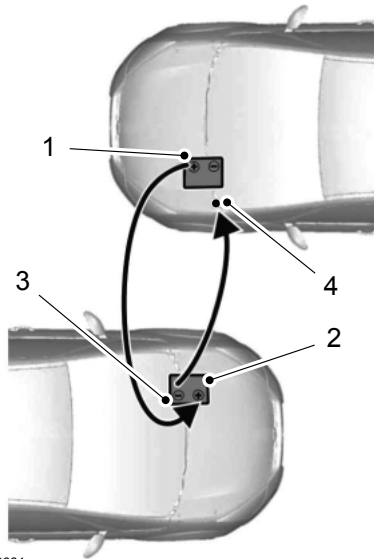
Roadside Emergencies

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING

 Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables. Battery positions may vary.

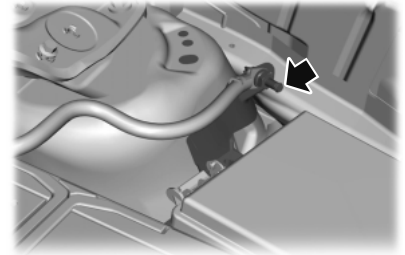
Note: *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*



E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.




E152134

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, or connect the negative (-) cable to the ground connection point, if available.

Roadside Emergencies

WARNING

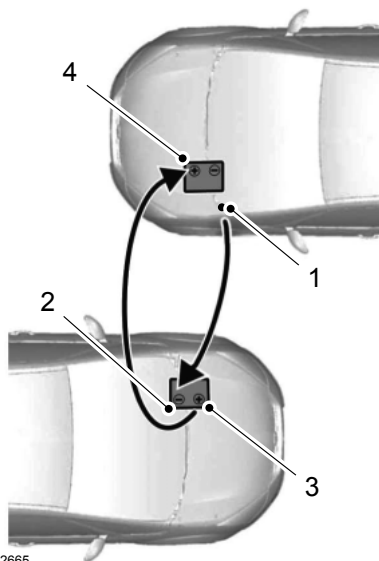
 Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 rpms, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. After starting the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E142665

1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface or connecting point, if available.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After starting your disabled vehicle and removing the jumper cables, allow your vehicle to idle for several minutes so the battery can recharge.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the safety belt pretensioners.

Roadside Emergencies

The horn and lamps will turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

Customer Assistance

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing address

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121

Telephone

1-800-521-4140
(TDD for the hearing impaired:
1-800-232-5952)

Online

Additional information and resources are available online at www.lincolnowner.com

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Manuals
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

Mailing address

Lincoln Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

Telephone

1-800-387-9333

Online

www.ford.ca

Twitter English

@LincolnMotorCA

Customer Assistance

Twitter French

@LincolnQC

Instagram

@LincolnMotorCA

Facebook

/LincolnMotorCA

Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18000 miles (29 000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR

Customer Assistance

2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss

Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you

may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try

Customer Assistance

to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:

**BBB AUTO LINE
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600
Arlington, Virginia 22201**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

Note: *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

Customer Assistance

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (313) 594-4857
Fax: (313) 390-0804
Email: expcac@ford.com

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)
FAX: (313) 390-0804
Email: prcac@ford.com
www.ford.com.pr

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Customer Assistance

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.

Telephone: +971 4 3326084
Toll-Free Number of the Kingdom of Saudi
Arabia: 800 8971409
Local Telephone Number of Kuwait:
24810575
FAX: +971 4 3327299
Email: menacac@ford.com
www.me.ford.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing expcac@ford.com.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

**Customers in the U.S. should call
1-800-392-3673.**

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, Michigan 48170
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

www.helminc.com

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)



E142557

Customer Assistance

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada.

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website	http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm
Phone	1-800-333-0510

Fuses

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Pre-Fuse Box

The pre-fuse box is in the engine compartment attached to the positive battery post. This box contains several high current fuses. If you need to replace one of these high current fuses, see an authorized dealer.

Power Distribution Box

WARNINGS



Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



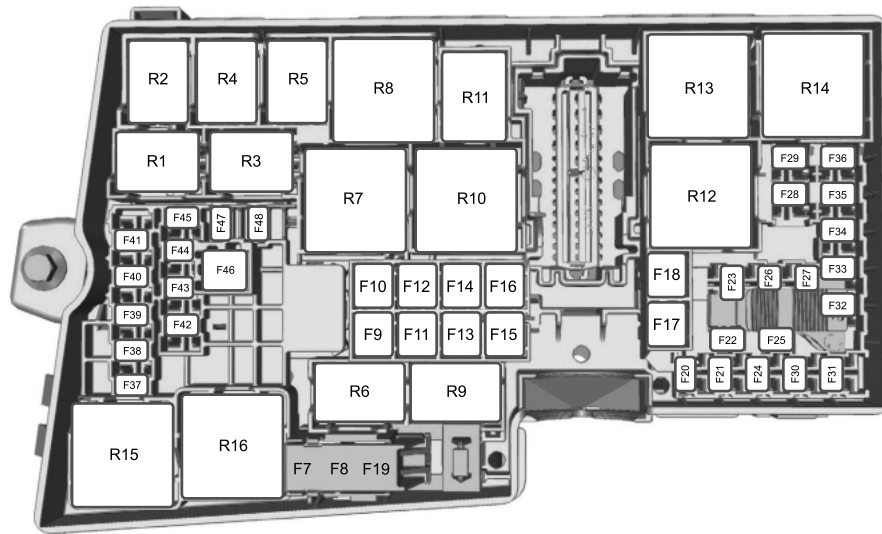
To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

You will need to reset some features if you disconnect and reconnect the battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 290).

Lift the release lever at the rear of the cover to remove it.

Fuses



E157389

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F7	50A ²	Anti-lock brake system module
F8	30A ²	Anti-lock brake system module
F9	20A ²	Fuel pump relay
F10	40A ²	Blower motor relay
F11	30A ²	Run start relay
F12	40A ²	Powertrain control module relay
F13	30A ²	Starter relay
F14	30A ²	Memory seat
F15	30A ²	Wipers and washers relay
F16	25A ²	Cooling fan
F17	40A ²	Cooling fan 1 (without trailer tow)

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
	50A ²	Cooling fan 1 (with trailer tow)
F18	40A ²	Cooling fan 2 (without trailer tow)
	50A ²	Cooling fan 2 (with trailer tow)
F19	5A ¹	Anti-lock brake system module run/start
F20	20A ¹	Horn relay
F21	10A ¹	Brake pedal switch
F22	25A ¹	Windshield wipers and washer
F23	5A ¹	Run/start relay coil
F24	20A ¹	Transmission range control module
F25	10A ¹	Air conditioning clutch relay
F26	5A ¹	Powertrain control module relay coil
F27	10A ¹	Washer pump relay

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F28	10A ¹	Alternator sensor
F29	15A ¹	Rain sensor Rear wiper Washer pump relay coil
F30	20A ¹	Left-hand headlamp
F31	20A ¹	Right-hand headlamp
F32	15A ¹	Vehicle power 1 (powertrain control module)
F33	15A ¹	Vehicle power 2 (canister vent solenoid, universal exhausted gas oxygen sensor, variable camshaft timing, catalyst monitor sensor, canister purge solenoid)
F34	15A ¹	Vehicle power 3 (A/C clutch control relay coil, variable A/C compressor, fan control relay coil, engine charge air bypass valve solenoid, active grill shutters)
F35	15A ¹	Vehicle power 4 (ignition coils)
F36	—	Not used
F37	—	Not used

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F38	—	Not used
F39	5A ¹	Powertrain control ignition start power - run
F40	10A ¹	Electronic power assist steering run/start
F41	—	Not used
F42	10A ¹	Adaptive cruise control Blind spot information system Heads-up display Rear video camera
F43	—	Not used
F44	5A ¹	Heated rear window relay coil
F45	5A ¹	Transmission range control module run/start
F46	40A ²	Heated rear window relay

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F47	—	Not used
F48	—	Not used

¹ Mini fuse

² J-case fuse

Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Run start
R2	Horn
R3	Fuel pump
R4	Rear window washer pump
R5	Cooling fan relay 3 (with trailer tow)
R6	Windshield wipers
R7	Cooling fan relay 1 (without trailer tow) Cooling fan relay 5 (with trailer tow)
R8	Starter
R9	Not used

Fuses

Relay	Circuits switched
R10	Cooling fan relay 4 (with trailer tow)
R11	Air conditioning clutch
R12	Cooling fan relay 1 (with trailer tow) Cooling fan relay 3 (without trailer tow)
R13	Cooling fan relay 2
R14	Powertrain control module
R15	Heated rear window
R16	Blower motor

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

The fuse panel is behind the lower end of the glove box.

Fuses



E145984

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	10A ¹	Lighting (ambient, glove box, vanity, dome, cargo)
2	7.5A ¹	Memory seats
3	20A ¹	Driver door unlock
4	5A ¹	Not used (spare)
5	20A ¹	Subwoofer amplifier THX amplifier
6	10A ²	Not used (spare)
7	10A ²	Not used (spare)
8	10A ²	Not used (spare)
9	10A ²	Not used (spare)
10	5A ²	Keypad Power liftgate logic
11	5A ²	Not used (spare)

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
12	7.5A ²	Climate control Gear shift control Push-button ignition
13	7.5A ²	Cluster Datalink module logic Steering column module logic
14	10A ²	Not used (spare)
15	10A ²	Datalink module
16	15A ¹	Not used (spare)
17	5A ²	Cellphone passport module
18	5A ²	Not used (spare)
19	5A ²	Not used (spare)
20	5A ²	Not used (spare)
21	5A ²	Humidity and in-car temperature

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
22	5A ²	Occupant classification sensor
23	10A ¹	Delayed accessory (driver window switch, moonroof logic, power inverter logic)
24	20A ¹	Central lock and unlock
25	30A ¹	Driver door (window, mirror)
26	30A ¹	Front passenger door (window, mirror)
27	30A ¹	Moonroof
28	20A ¹	THX amplifier
29	30A ¹	Rear driver side door (window)
30	30A ¹	Rear passenger side door (window)
31	15A ¹	Not used (spare)
32	10A ¹	Display GPS Radio frequency receiver

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
		Voice control
33	20A ¹	Radio and active noise control
34	30A ¹	Run/start bus (fuse #19, 20, 21, 22, 35, 36, 37, circuit breaker)
35	5A ¹	Restraints control module
36	15A ¹	Auto-dimming rear view mirror Continuous control damping suspension Lane keeping system module Rear heated seats module
37	15A ¹	All-wheel drive relay Heated steering wheel
38	30A	Not used (spare)

¹ Micro fuse

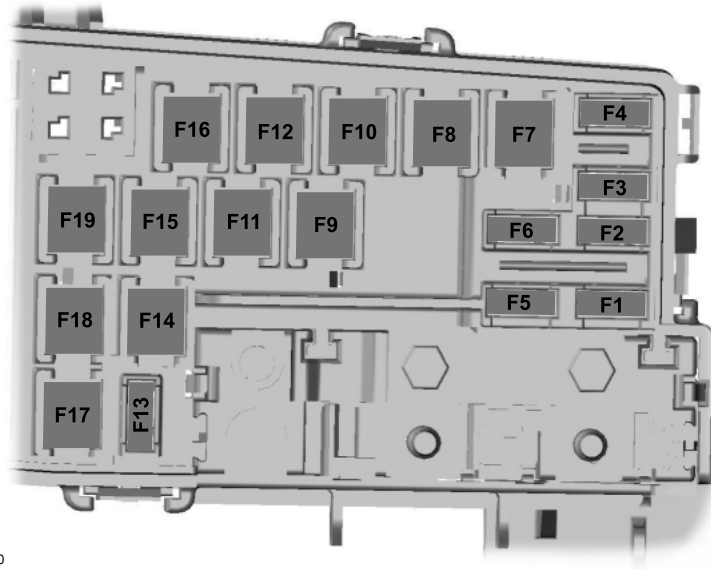
² Dual micro fuse

Fuses

Rear Cargo Fuse Box

The fuse panel is located in the cargo area

on the passenger side. Open the fuse panel cover to gain access to the fuses.



E175700

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F1	—	Not used
F2	—	Not used
F3	5A ¹	Hands-free liftgate module Spare
F4	—	Not used
F5	—	Not used
F6	—	Not used
F7	30A ²	Rear heated seats
F8	30A ²	Power cinch latch Power liftgate
F9	20A ²	Heated front seats
F10	40A ²	Trailer tow
F11	30A ²	Climate control seats
F12	20A ²	Auxiliary power point - instrument panel

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F13	—	Not used
F14	30A ²	Power seats
F15	20A ²	Auxiliary power point - inside of floor console
F16	20A ²	Auxiliary power point - rear of floor console
F17	—	Not used
F18	20A ²	Auxiliary power point - cargo area
F19	40A ²	Inverter power outlet

¹ Mini fuse

² J-case fuse

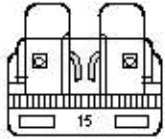
CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING



Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E142430

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. A break in the fuse wire will indicate a blown fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Maintenance

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

To help you service your vehicle, we provide scheduled maintenance information which makes tracking routine service easy. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 461).

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

Working with the Engine On

WARNING

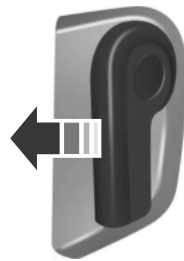


To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Block the wheels

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

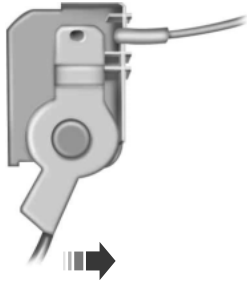
Opening the Hood



E142457

1. Inside your vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

Maintenance

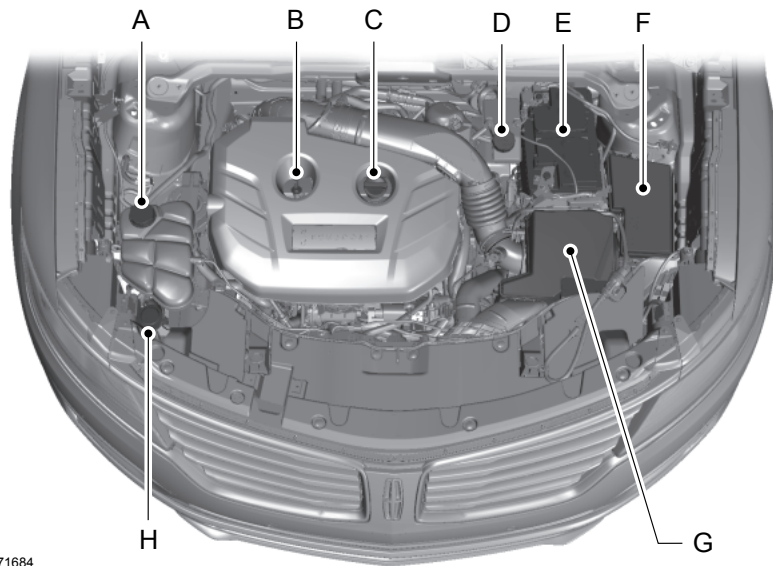


E142458

2. Go to the front of your vehicle and release the auxiliary latch.
3. Lift the hood until the lift cylinders hold it open.
4. To close the hood, lower the hood and apply closing force as it drops the last 8 to 11 inches (20 to 30 centimeters).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



E171684

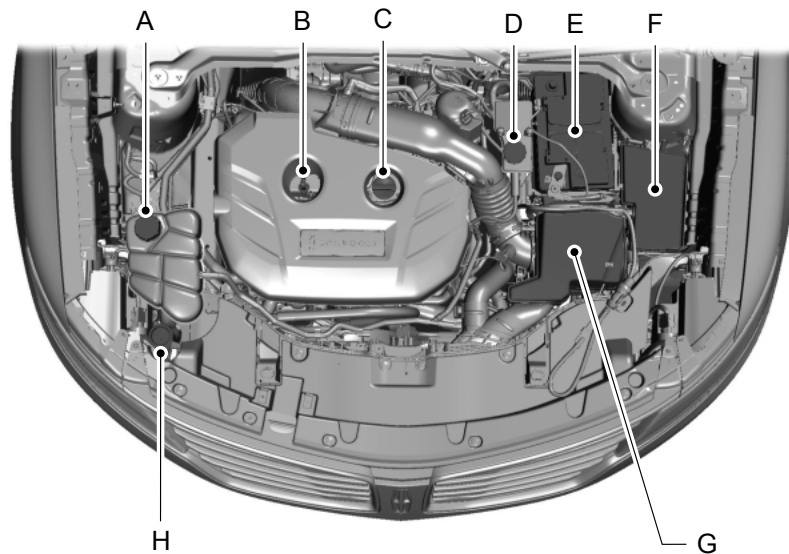
- A Engine coolant reservoir
- B Engine oil dipstick

Maintenance

- C Engine oil filler cap
- D Brake fluid reservoir
- E Battery
- F Power distribution box
- G Air filter assembly
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST™



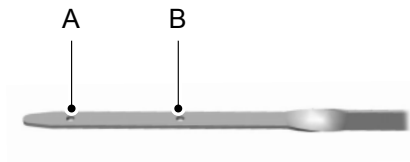
E171685

- A Engine coolant reservoir
- B Engine oil dipstick

Maintenance

- C Engine oil filler cap
- D Brake fluid reservoir
- E Battery
- F Power distribution box
- G Air filter assembly
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK



E170468

- A MIN
- B MAX

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 338).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Note: Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3000 mi (5,000 km).

Maintenance


Adding Engine Oil




E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

WARNINGS

 Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

WARNINGS

 Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

1. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 338).
3. Wipe off any spilled oil.
4. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*


OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET


To reset the oil monitoring system after an oil change, See **General Information** (page 111).


ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

Checking the Engine Coolant

WARNINGS

 Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.

 Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

 To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

 Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

Maintenance

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

Note: During normal vehicle operation, the engine coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the engine coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the engine coolant has degraded nor does it require the engine coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the engine coolant to be replaced.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the engine coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 461).

Note: Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.

Note: If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add coolant immediately. See **Adding Engine Coolant** in this chapter.

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30°F (-34°C) and -34°F (-37°C).

Note: For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Robinair Coolant and Battery Refractometer 75240. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentrations.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Do not use engine coolant or antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

Adding Engine Coolant

- Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. Mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Use prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 338).
- In case of emergency, a large amount of water without engine coolant may be added in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft Premium Cooling System Flush, and refilled with engine coolant as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Maintenance

- Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant). Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure will escape as you unscrew the cap.

Add prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 338).

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the proper level.

Recycled Engine Coolant

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% will provide improved freeze point protection. Engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% will provide improved overheat protection. Engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted engine coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

What You Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The "fail-safe" distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

Maintenance

How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area and:



A high engine temperature message will appear in the information display.



The service engine soon indicator will light.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNINGS



Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, the vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. Arrange for your vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.
5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.*

Maintenance

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

Note: *Transmission fluid should be checked by an authorized dealer. If required, fluid should be added by an authorized dealer.*

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid and filter at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled**

Maintenance (page 461). Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, (i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly) or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering (EPS) system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

WASHER FLUID CHECK

WARNING



If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Note: *The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 338).

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

Maintenance

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS



Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.



When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

WARNINGS



Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

Note: *If your battery has a cover or shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.*

Note: *See an authorized dealer for low voltage battery access, testing, or replacement.*

When a low voltage battery replacement is necessary, see an authorized dealer to replace the low voltage battery with a Ford recommended replacement low voltage battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle

To ensure proper operation of the battery management system (BMS), do not allow a technician to connect any electrical device ground connection directly to the low voltage battery negative post. A connection at the low voltage battery negative post can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If a person adds electrical or electronic accessories or components to the vehicle, the accessories or components may adversely affect the low voltage battery performance and durability and may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

Maintenance

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

When a battery replacement is required, the battery should only be replaced with a Ford recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically-controlled by a computer, some engine control settings are maintained by power from the low voltage battery. Some engine computer settings, like the idle trim and fuel trim strategy, optimize the driveability and performance of the engine. Some other computer settings, like the clock and radio station presets, are also maintained in memory by power from the low voltage battery. When a technician disconnects and connects the low voltage battery, these settings are erased.

Note: *Until you switch the ignition to the on position, you will receive a message in your information display stating that your vehicle is not in park.*

Complete the following procedure in order to restore the settings:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Shift the transmission into P.
3. Turn off all accessories.
4. Step on the brake pedal and start the vehicle.
5. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature. While the engine is warming up, complete the following: Reset the clock. See **Audio System** (page 347). Reset the power windows bounce-back feature. See **Windows and Mirrors** (page 96). Reset the radio station presets. See **Audio System** (page 347).
6. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute. If the engine turns off, step on the accelerator to start the engine.

7. While the engine is running, step on the brake pedal and shift the transmission to N.
8. Allow the engine to run for at least one minute by pressing on the accelerator pedal.
9. Drive your vehicle at least 10 miles (16 kilometers) to completely relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.

Note: *Certain features may not operate if the Battery Monitor System is not reset with a scan tool following a jump start or battery replacement. Normal electrical accessory operation should resume after your vehicle is left undisturbed for 8 hours.*

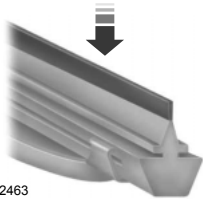
Note: *If you do not allow the engine to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the engine computer eventually relearns the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.*

Maintenance

Note: Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.

Note: It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

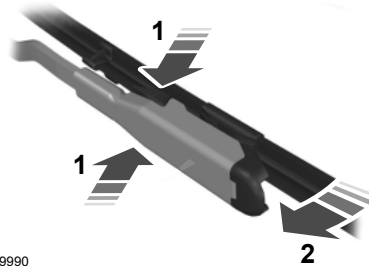
Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

The wiper arms can be manually moved when the ignition is off. This allows for ease of blade replacement and cleaning under the blades.

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



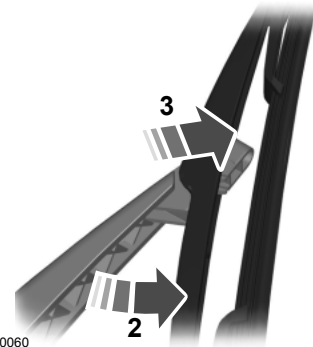
E129990

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.

To change the rear blades, do the following:

1. Lift the wiper arm.



E130060

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.

Maintenance

5. Install in the reverse order.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

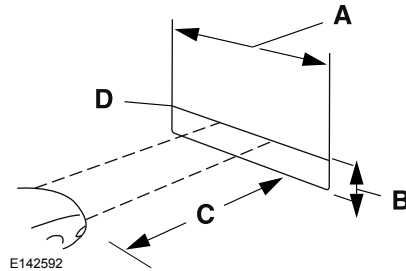
Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

The assembly plant properly aims the headlamps on your vehicle. If your vehicle has been in an accident, have the alignment of your headlamps checked by your authorized dealer.



- A 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- B Center height of lamp to ground
- C 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- D Horizontal reference line

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

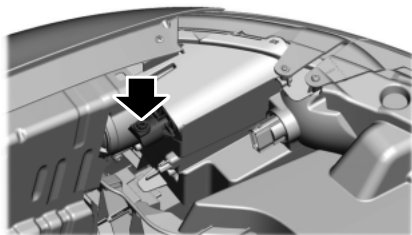
Note: To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

3. Switch on the low beam headlamps to light the wall or screen and open the hood.



4. On the wall or screen, you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, you will need to adjust the headlamp.

Maintenance



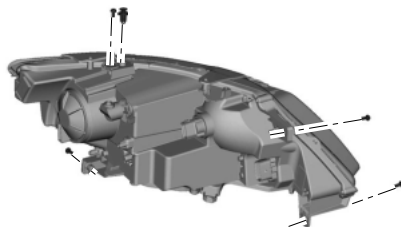
E171165

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp.
6. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.

REMOVING A HEADLAMP



E171166

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position and open the hood.
2. Remove the pushpin and the four screws from the headlamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the headlamp assembly as far as possible toward the front of the vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Carefully lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

CHANGING A BULB

Lamp Assembly Condensation

The vents in the exterior lamps allow for normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets).
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Maintenance

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

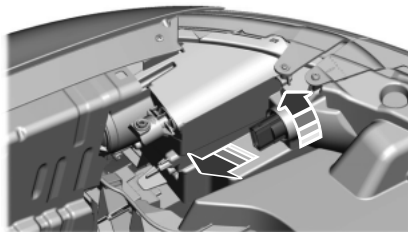
- Water puddle inside the lamp.
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens.

Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

Replacing High Intensity Discharge Headlamp Bulbs (If Equipped)

The headlamps on your vehicle use a high intensity discharge source. These lamps operate at a high voltage. When the bulb burns out, have the bulb and starter capsule assembly replaced by your authorized dealer.

Replacing Front Indicator Bulbs



E171167

1. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the headlamp assembly.
2. Gently pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

Install the new bulb in reverse order.

Replacing Signal Indicator Mirror Bulbs

Your vehicle uses a LED for the signal indicator mirror lamps. If replacement is required, see your authorized dealer.

Replacing Approach Lamp Bulbs

Your vehicle uses a LED for the approach lamps. If replacement is required, see your authorized dealer.

Replacing Tail, Brake and Direction Indicator Bulbs

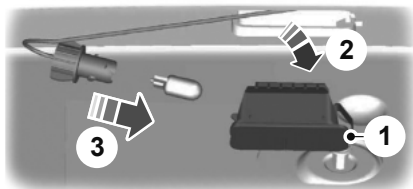
Your vehicle uses a LED for the tail, brake and direction indicator lamps. If replacement is required, see your authorized dealer.

Replacing Reverse Lamp Assembly

Your vehicle uses a LED for the reverse lamps. If replacement is required, see your authorized dealer.

Maintenance

Replacing License Plate Lamp Bulb



E72789

1. Carefully release the spring clip.

2. Remove the lamp.

3. Remove the bulb.

Reverse steps to reinstall bulb.

Replacing High-Mount Brake Lamp Bulb

Your vehicle is equipped with an LED center high-mount stop lamp located in the spoiler, designed to last the life of the vehicle. If replacement is required, see your authorized dealer.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

The specified replacement bulbs are in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized D.O.T. (Department of Transportation) for North America to affirm lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

Function	Trade number
* Headlamp (high intensity discharge) Low/High	D3S
* Sidemarkers - front	LED
* Park lamp - front	LED
* Turn lamp - front	7444NA
Signal indicator mirror lamp	LED
Welcome light	LED
Approach lamp	LED

Maintenance

Function	Trade number
* Tail/brake lamp	LED
* Turn lamp - rear	LED
* Backup lamp	LED
License plate lamp	W5W
* High-mount brake lamp	LED
* Interior lamps	LED


* To replace these lamps, see your authorized dealer.

To replace instrument panel lights, see your authorized dealer.

Maintenance

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

WARNING

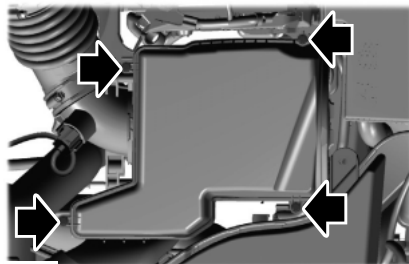
 To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed. Do not remove the air cleaner while the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed in the Motorcraft Parts table. See **Motorcraft Parts** (page 339).

For EcoBoost equipped vehicles: When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

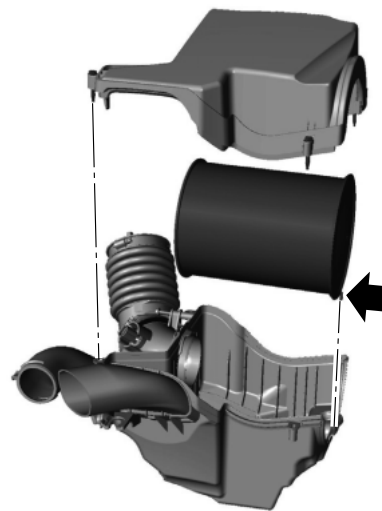
Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 461).

Note: Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.



E171370

1. Loosen the four fasteners and remove the air cleaner assembly lid.
2. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
3. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air cleaner assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



E170433

Maintenance

4. Install the new air filter element. Slide the open end of the air filter element in first, below the tab. Then push the closed end of the air filter into the bottom of the tray. The closed end should fit inside the groove in the tray. The tab of the closed end of the air filter should be oriented down and fit between the forks on the tray as shown at the arrow above.

Note: *Make sure you align the tab in the air filter element with the fork in the air cleaner assembly tray.*

5. Install the air cleaner assembly lid and tighten the four fasteners.

Vehicle Care

GENERAL INFORMATION

Your Ford or Lincoln authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

- Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)
- Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)
- Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)
- Motorcraft Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)
- Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)
- Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)
- Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)
- Motorcraft Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)

- Motorcraft Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada only) [CXC-37-(A, B, D or F)]
- Motorcraft Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant (U.S. only) (ZC-32-B2)
- Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)
- Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-56)
- Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)
- Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)
- Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. We recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

Vehicle Care

Exterior Chrome Parts

- Apply a high quality-cleaning product to bumpers and other chrome parts. Follow the manufacturer's instructions. We recommend Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner.
- Do not apply the cleaning product to hot surfaces. Do not leave the cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than the time recommended.
- Using other non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Note: *Never use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

Exterior Plastic Parts

For routine cleaning we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash. If tar or grease spots are present, we recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Do not use a commercial or high-pressure sprayer on the surface or edge of stripes and graphics. This can damage them and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle surface.

Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free of debris or foreign material.

WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax.
- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.
- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
 - Roof racks.
 - Bumpers.
 - Grained door handles.
 - Side moldings.
 - Mirror housings.
 - Windshield cowl area.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.

- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

WARNINGS



Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

Vehicle Care

WARNINGS



On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

Note: Follow the same procedure for cleaning leather seats when cleaning leather interior. See **Cleaning Leather Seats** (page 306).

Note: Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.

For grease or tar stains:

- Spot clean the area with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner in Canada).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.

Cleaning Black Label Interior (If Equipped)

Note: Alcantara microfiber cloth fabric is made of polyester microfiber with micro-porous polyurethane. Using commercially available fabric cleaners can cause permanent damage.

Note: Do not use commercially available leather and vinyl cleaning products on Alcantara microfiber cloth fabric.

Note: Lincoln Black Label vehicles may have Alcantara microfiber cloth fabric on the seats, headliner, floor mats and door panels.

Depending on the type of stain, use water, lemon juice or pure ethyl alcohol when cleaning. For cleaning Alcantara microfiber cloth, refer to the following chart:

Vehicle Care

Type of Stain	Cleaning Procedure
Fruit juice, jam, jelly, syrup or ketchup.	Use lukewarm water and rinse by dabbing with clean water.
Blood, egg, excrement or urine.	Use cold water and rinse by dabbing with clean water. Avoid warm water because it makes these substances coagulate.
Liquor, alcoholic beverages, wine, beer, cola and tea.	Use lukewarm water. If the color remains, treat with lemon juice and then rinse.
Indelible pencil, cocoa, chocolate, pastry with cream or chocolate, ice cream or mustard.	Use lukewarm water and rinse by dabbing with clean water.
Vinegar, hair gel, tomato sauce or coffee with sugar.	Use lemon juice, wipe with lukewarm water and rinse by dabbing with clean water.
Dye transfer and all other stains.	Use ethyl alcohol, then dab with water.

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

WARNING



Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

Note: Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces. See **Cleaning Leather Seats** (page 306).

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.
 - Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
 - Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
 - Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.
2. Use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.
 3. Alternatively, wipe the surface with a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
 4. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, soft cloth and press it onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
 5. Remove the soaked cloth, then with a clean, damp cloth, use a rubbing motion for 60 seconds on the soiled area.
 6. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, soft cloth as quickly as possible.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (If

Equipped)

Note: Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing spots and stains such as dye transfer, use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Note: Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

Note: Do not use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner ZC-56 on Lincoln Black Label, Presidential or Reserve Leathers because it can damage those and other semi-aniline leather seating fabrics. It can also damage surround microfiber accent surfaces. To clean Lincoln Black Label, Presidential or Reserve Leathers, first vacuum the seats to remove loose dirt. Then wipe the leather with a clean soft cloth dampened with lukewarm water and a mild soap. Wiper the leather again with a slightly damp cloth to remove soap residue, and dry with a soft cloth. To maintain the leather's resiliency, it should be cleaned whenever soiled.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Always read the instructions before using cleaning products.

CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS (If

Equipped)

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

Note: Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Vehicle Care

Note: *Industrial-strength or heavy-duty cleaners in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.*

Note: *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergents.*

Note: *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean the wheels weekly using Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner. Apply using manufacturer's instructions.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.

- Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.

Vehicle Care

- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.
- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if battery cables are disconnected.*

Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.

Vehicle Care

- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.


Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.


Wheels and Tires

GENERAL INFORMATION

Notice to utility vehicle and truck owners

WARNINGS

 Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers, drive at safe speeds for the conditions, keep tires properly inflated, never overload or improperly load your vehicle, and make sure every passenger is properly restrained.

 In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts, and children and infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.




E145298

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

Study your owner's manual and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

All-wheel drive system (if equipped)

WARNING

 Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel-drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel-drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it will not stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

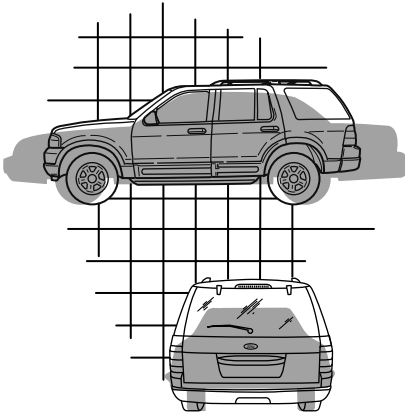
A vehicle equipped with all-wheel drive has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

For all-wheel-drive vehicles, a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided should never be used. A dissimilar spare tire size (other than the spare tire provided) or major dissimilar tire sized between the front and rear axles could cause the all-wheel-drive system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive.

Wheels and Tires

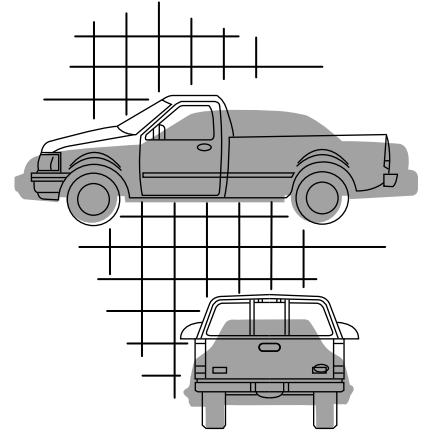
How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

Sport utility vehicles and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:



E145299

- Higher - to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter - to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.
- Narrower - to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.



E168583

Wheels and Tires

As a result of the above dimensional differences, Sport utility vehicles and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition. These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

TIRE CARE

Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading



E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).


U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

WARNING

 The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

Wheels and Tires

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature A B C

WARNING



The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause

the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) or 36 psi (2.5 bar) depending on tires size and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

Wheels and Tires

***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

* **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

* **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

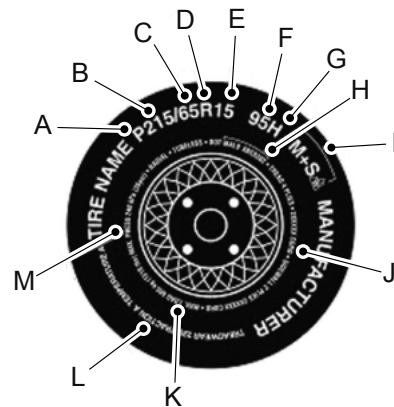
***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

Wheels and Tires

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)

Wheels and Tires

Letter rating	Speed rating
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN): This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers

go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. M+S or M/S: Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. Tire Ply Composition and Material

Used: Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

Wheels and Tires

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:

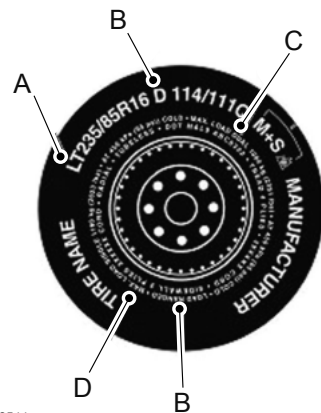
Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to

the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142544

LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. LT: Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. Load Range and Load Inflation Limits: Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

Wheels and Tires

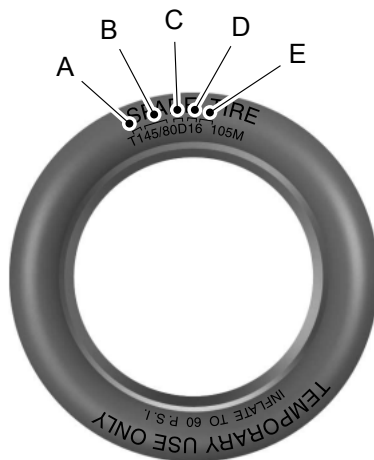
C. Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold: Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold: Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142545

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. T: Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. 145: Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. 80: Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. D: Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. 16: Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Wheels and Tires

Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

WARNING



Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Maximum Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge

Wheels and Tires

that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 11°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

Note: *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (for example, driven more than 1 mi (1.6 km), never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

Note: *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

Note: *If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

Note: *Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T type mini-spare tires, see the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, see the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.*

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

Wheels and Tires

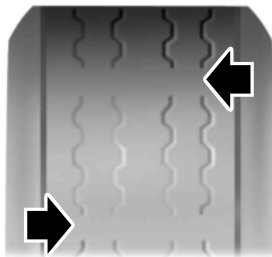
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire Wear



E142546

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.


Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Wheels and Tires

Age

WARNING

 Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number


Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

WARNINGS

 Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk

Wheels and Tires

WARNINGS

of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

WARNINGS

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 feet (3.66 meters) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 feet (3.66 meters) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Wheels and Tires

Safety Practices

WARNINGS



If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires. Spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- *Observe posted speed limits
- *Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- *Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- *Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Wheels and Tires

Tire Rotation

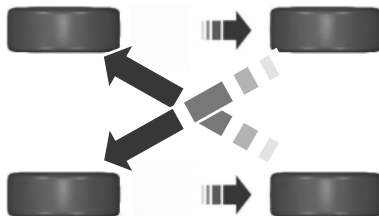
Note: If your tires show uneven wear, ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Front-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram).



E142547

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING



Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and cables. If you need to use cables, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as cables may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and traction devices

Wheels and Tires

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- Use 10 mm cables or chains only on front axle with 235/50R18 tires.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device.
- The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the front axle.
- Do not use chains or cables on 235/45R19 and 245/45R19 tires.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- When driving with tire cables do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.

- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use cables on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING



The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Wheels and Tires

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

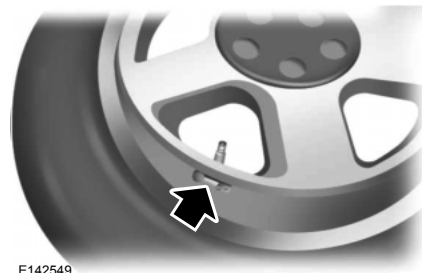
Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from

functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



Note: Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See *Inflating Your Tires* in this chapter.

Wheels and Tires

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Wheels and Tires

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When your temporary spare tire is installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When your temporary spare tire is installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Wheels and Tires

When Inflating Your Tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended

inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

WARNINGS



The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, the Ford Tire Mobility Kit sealant should be used. The tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer after use of the sealant.

WARNINGS



See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 326). If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 326). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

Wheels and Tires

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING



Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. T-type mini-spare: This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel: This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.

- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability

3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.

Wheels and Tires

- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability


When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.


Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.


Tire Change Procedure


WARNINGS


 When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent your vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

WARNINGS

 To help prevent your vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure to place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N), set the parking brake, and block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of your vehicle) to the tire being changed.

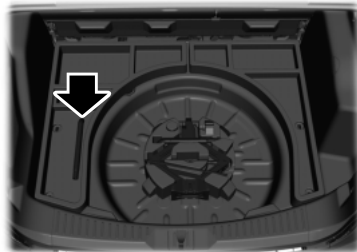
 Never get underneath a vehicle that is supported only by a jack. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

 Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

 Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided as original equipment with your vehicle, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications.

Note: *Passengers should not remain in your vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

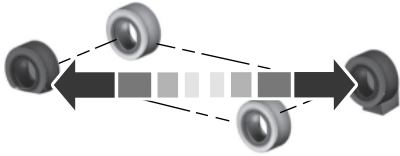
1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off.
3. Remove the carpeted wheel cover.
4. Remove the wing nut that secures the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.



E160855

5. Remove the jack from the foam holder. The lug wrench is located in the left side storage foam next to the spare tire. Remove the flat tire retainer strap from the jack base.

Wheels and Tires



E142551

6. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.
7. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

Note: Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

8. The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and are depicted on the warning label on the jack.



E145908

9. Small arrow-shaped marks on the sills show the location of the jacking points.

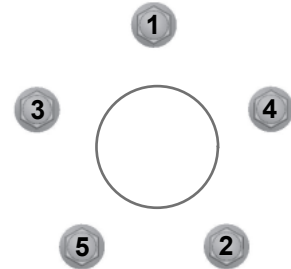


E162190

10. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

Note: If equipped with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, remove the wheel nuts prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.

11. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
12. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



E75442

Wheels and Tires

13. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 336).

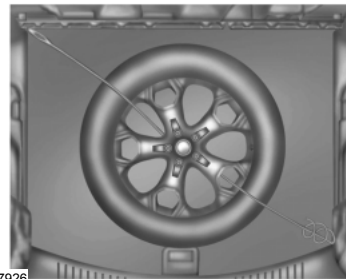
Stowing the flat tire

1. Put the jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.
2. Unblock the wheels.
3. Stow the flat tire on the floor in the cargo area. Secure with the flat tire retainer strap by following the next steps:



E142906

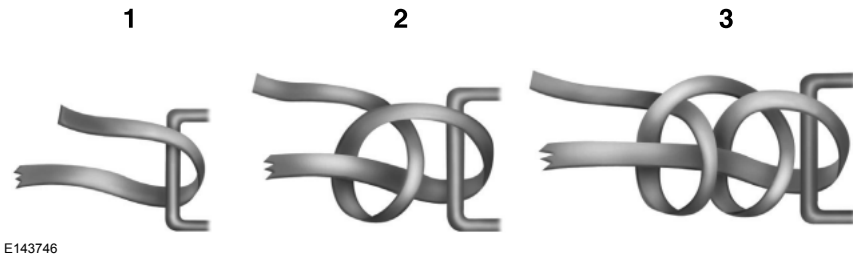
4. Locate the cargo tie-down near the seatback. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.



E157926

5. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
6. Locate the front cargo tie-down at the opposite corner of the cargo area to the tie-down used in Step 4. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.
7. Secure by tying a 2-half hitch knot.

Wheels and Tires



Wheels and Tires

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

WARNING



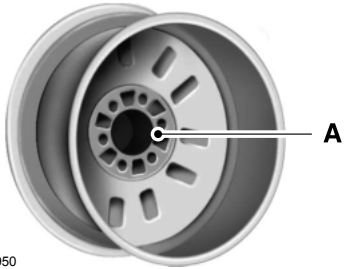
When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Bolt size	lb-ft (Nm)
M12 x 1.5	100 (135)

Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

Wheels and Tires



E145950

A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

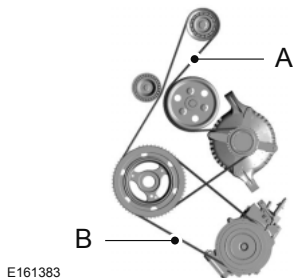
Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Engine	2.0L EcoBoost engine	2.3L EcoBoost engine
Cubic inches	122	138
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane	Minimum 87 octane
Compression ratio	9.3:1	9.5:1
Spark plug gap	0.027-0.031 in. (0.70-0.80 mm)	0.027-0.031 in. (0.70-0.80 mm)

Drivebelt Routing

2.0L engine

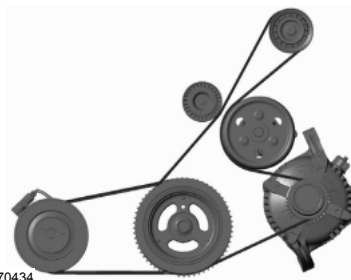


Capacities and Specifications

A. The **long** drivebelt is on the first pulley groove closest to the engine

B. The **short** drivebelt is on the second pulley groove farthest from the engine

2.3L engine



E170434

MOTORCRAFT PARTS

Component	2.0L EcoBoost engine	2.3L EcoBoost engine
Air filter element	FA-1908	FA-1908
Oil filter	FL-910-S	FL-910-S
Battery	BXT-48H6-610	
Spark plugs	CYFS-12Y-2 / SP-537	CYFS-12Y-2 / SP-537

Capacities and Specifications

Component	2.0L EcoBoost engine	2.3L EcoBoost engine
Cabin air filter	FP70	
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2250 (driver side) WW-1575 (passenger side) WW-1106 (rear window)	

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

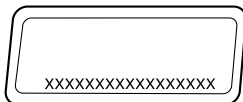
If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 461).

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

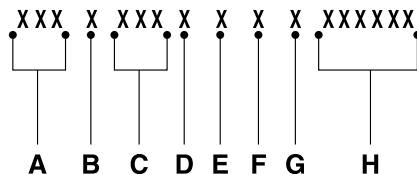
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E142476

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:



E142477

- A World manufacturer identifier
- B Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type
- D Engine type
- E Check digit
- F Model year
- G Assembly plant
- H Production sequence number

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

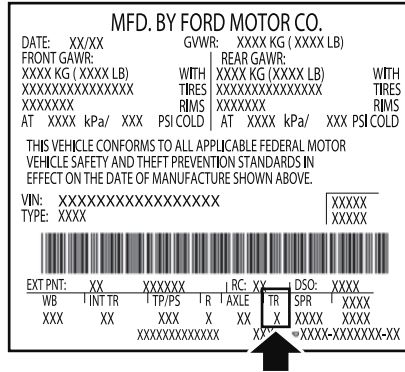
MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.							
DATE: XX/XX	GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)						
FRONT GAWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)	REAR GAWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)						
WITH XXXX KG (XXXX LB)	WITH XXXX KG (XXXX LB)	WITH XXXX KG (XXXX LB)	WITH XXXX KG (XXXX LB)				
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX				
XXXXXXXXXX	RIMS XXXXXXXX	RIMS XXXXXXXX	RIMS XXXXXXXX				
AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD	AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD	AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD	AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD				
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.							
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX			XXXXXX XXXXXX				
TYPE: XXXX							
EXT PNT: XX	XXXXXX	RC: XX	DSO: XXXX				
WB	INTR	TP/PS	TR	AXLE	TR	SPR	XXXX
XXX	XX	XXX	X	XX	X	XXXX	XXXX
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX				XXX	XXXX-XXXXXX-XX		

E167469

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

Capacities and Specifications

TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION



The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

Description	Code
Six-speed automatic transmission 6F35	6

Capacities and Specifications

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Item	Capacity	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number / Ford specification
Brake fluid ¹	Between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft High Performance DOT 4 LV Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-20 / WSS-M6C65-A2
Door latch, hood latch, auxiliary hood latch, trunk latch, seat tracks	–	Multi-Purpose Grease spray (lithium grease)	XL-5
Lock cylinder	–	Motorcraft Penetrating and Lock Lubricant (U.S.)	XL-1 (U.S.) / None
		Motorcraft Penetrating fluid (Canada)	CXC-51-A (Canada) / None
Automatic transmission fluid ^{2,3}	9.0 qt (8.5 L)	Motorcraft MERCON LV	XT-10-QLVC WSS-M2C938-A
Rear differential fluid (All Wheel Drive)	2.4 pt (1.15L)	Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A
Power transfer unit fluid (All Wheel Drive) ⁴	18 fl oz (0.53 L)	Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
Engine oil ^{5,6,7} 2.0L EcoBoost	5.7 qt (5.4 L)	Motorcraft SAE 5W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil or Motorcraft SAE 5W-30 Full Synthetic Motor Oil	XO-5W30-QSP or XO-5W30-QFS (U.S.) / WSS-M2C946-A
			CXO-5W30-LSP12 or CXO-5W30-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C946-A

Capacities and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number / Ford specification
Engine oil ^{5,6,7} 2.3L EcoBoost			
Engine coolant ⁸ 2.0L EcoBoost	9.7 qt (9.2 L)	Motorcraft Orange Antifreeze / Coolant Prediluted	VC-3DIL-B (U.S.); CVC-3DIL-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D2
Engine coolant ⁸ 2.3L EcoBoost	9.2 qt (8.7 L)		
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required	Motorcraft Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant (U.S.)	ZC-32-B2 (U.S.) / WSS-M14P19-A
		Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada)	CXC-37-(A, B, D, and F) (Canada) / WSS- M14P19-A
Fuel tank	15.5 gal (58.5 L)	-	-
A/C refrigerant ⁹	1.5 lb (0.68 kg)	Motorcraft R-134a Refrigerant	YN-19 (U.S.) / WSH-M17B19-A

Capacities and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number / Ford specification
			CYN-16-R (Canada) / WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil ⁹	4.6 fl oz (136 ml)	Motorcraft PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil	YN-12-D / WSH-M1C231-B

Capacities and Specifications

¹ Ford recommends using Motorcraft (Ford) DOT 4 LV High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet the Ford performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

² Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

³ Automatic transmissions that require Motorcraft MERCON LV transmission fluid should only use Motorcraft MERCON LV transmission fluid. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.

Change the automatic transmission fluid at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 461).

⁴ See your authorized dealer for fluid level checking or filling.

⁵ Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Your engine has been designed to use Motorcraft engine oils or equivalent oils that meet Ford's oil specification. It is also acceptable to use an engine oil of recommended viscosity grade that meets API SN requirements and displays the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

⁶ Do not use oils labeled as API SN unless the label also displays the API certification mark. These oils do not meet the requirements of your vehicle's engine and emissions system.

⁷ Do not use supplemental engine oil additives. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford's warranty.

⁸ Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

⁹ See the Warning below:

WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant R-134a under high pressure. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury. Have the air conditioning refrigerant system serviced only by qualified personnel.

Audio System

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC).

Those frequencies are:

- AM: 530, 540-1700, 1710 kHz
- FM: 87.9-107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.

Note: Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.

Note: Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Audio System

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

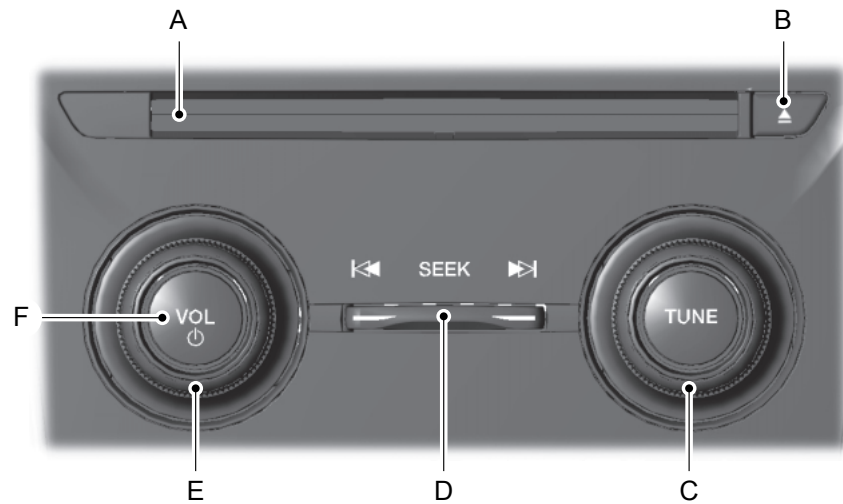
WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Audio System

Note: The MyLincoln Touch system controls most of the audio features. See **Entertainment** (page 378).



E171512

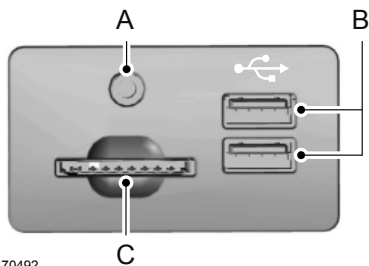
Audio System

- A **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- B **Eject:** Press the control to eject a CD.
- C **TUNE:** Turn the control to search manually through the radio frequency band. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In SIRIUS mode, the system selects the previous or next channel. If you select a specific category (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), turn the TUNE control to find the previous or next channel in the selected category.
- D **Seek/Fast Forward/Reverse:** Press the control to go to the previous or next track or available radio station. Press and hold to either reverse or fast forward through the current track or to quickly reverse or advance through the radio bands in individual increments.
- E **Volume:** Turn the control to adjust the volume level on your system.
- F **Power:** Press the control to switch the audio system on and off.

MEDIA HUB

The media hub is under a small access door at the front of the floor console. The media hub has the following features:

Audio System



E170492

- A Audio input jack (Line in)
- B USB ports
- C SD card slot

See **Entertainment** (page 378).

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

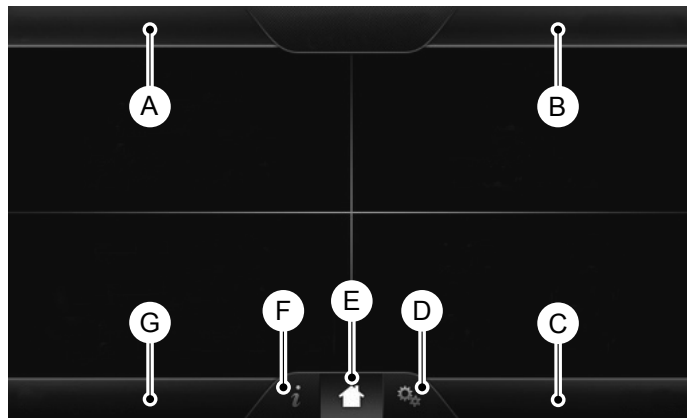


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: You can also set up certain convenience features using the MyLincoln Mobile application on your smartphone. For more information on MyLincoln Mobile, visit:

Web Address
http://support.lincoln.com/owner-services/mylincoln-mobile-app

MyLincoln Touch™



E161891

- A Phone.
- B Navigation (or Information if your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation).
- C Climate.
- D Settings.
- E Home.
- F Information.
- G Entertainment.

This system uses a four-corner strategy to provide quick access to several vehicle features and settings. The touchscreen provides easy interaction with your cellular phone, multimedia, climate control and navigation system. The corners display any active modes within those menus, such as phone status or the climate temperature.

Note: *Some features are not available while your vehicle is moving.*

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 30 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

PHONE

Press to select any of the following:

- Phone.
- Quick Dial.
- Phonebook.
- History.
- Messaging.
- Settings.

NAVIGATION

Press to select any of the following:

- My Home.
- Favorites.
- Previous Destinations.
- Point of Interest.
- Emergency.
- Street Address.
- Intersection.
- City Center.
- Map.
- Edit Route.
- Cancel Route.

CLIMATE

Press to select any of the following:

- Driver Settings.
- Recirculated Air.
- Auto.
- Dual.
- Passenger Settings.
- A/C.
- Defrost.



SETTINGS

Press to select any of the following:

- Clock.
- Display.
- Sound.
- Vehicle.
- Settings.
- Help.



HOME

Press to access your home screen. Depending on your vehicle's option package and software, your screens may vary in appearance from the descriptions in this section. Your features may also be limited depending on your market. Check with an authorized dealer for availability.



INFORMATION

Press to select any of the following:

- Services.
- Travel Link.
- Alerts.
- Calendar.
- Apps.

ENTERTAINMENT

Press to select any of the following:

- AM.
- FM.
- SIRIUS.
- CD.
- USB.
- BT Stereo.
- SD Card.
- Line In.

Using the Touch-Sensitive Controls on Your System

To switch a feature on and off, just touch the graphic with your finger. To get the best performance from the touch-sensitive controls:

- Do not press hard on the controls. They are sensitive to light touch.
- Use your bare finger to touch the center of a touch-control graphic. Touching off-center of the graphic may affect operation of a nearby control.
- Make sure your hands are clean and dry.
- Since the touchscreen operates based on the touch of a finger, you may have trouble using it if you are wearing gloves.
- Keep metal and other conductive material away from the surface of the touchscreen as this may cause electronic interference (for example, inadvertently switching on a feature other than the one you meant to switch on).

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your bezel:

- **Power:** Switch the media or climate features off and on.
- **Temperature, fan and climate control:** Control the temperature, fan speed or settings of the climate control system.
- **Seek buttons** and **Tune knob:** Use as you normally would in media modes.
- **Eject:** Eject a CD from the entertainment system.

Using Your Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, use these controls on your steering wheel:

- **VOL:** Control the volume of playing media.
- **SEEK/PHONE:** Seek presets or use as you normally would in other entertainment modes. Press to answer, to end a phone call or to reject an incoming call.
- **Voice:** Press to start a voice session. Press again to end an active voice prompt so you can begin speaking. Press and hold to end a voice session.

Cleaning the Touchscreen Display

Use a clean, soft cloth such as one used for cleaning glasses. If dirt or fingerprints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the display. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the display.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you are not able to answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-9:00pm EST.

Sunday, 10:30am-7:30pm EST.

In the United States, call: 1-800-392-3673.

In Canada, call: 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

Safety Information

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.

MyLincoln Touch™

- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's manual for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 3 mph (5 km/h).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest reviews and ratings, SIRIUS Travel Link sports scores, movie times or ski conditions.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user views fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone.
	Adding phonebook contacts or uploading phonebook contacts (from a USB).
	List entries are limited for phone contacts and recent phone call entries.
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code.

MyLincoln Touch™

Restricted features	
	Enabling Valet Mode.
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Wi-Fi and Wireless	Editing wireless settings.
	Editing the list of wireless networks.
Videos, Photos and Graphics	Playing a video.
	Editing the screen's wallpaper or adding new wallpaper.
Text Messages	Composing text messages.
	Viewing received text messages.
	Editing preset text messages.
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination.
	Demo navigation route.
	Adding or editing Address Book entries or Avoid Areas.

Privacy Information

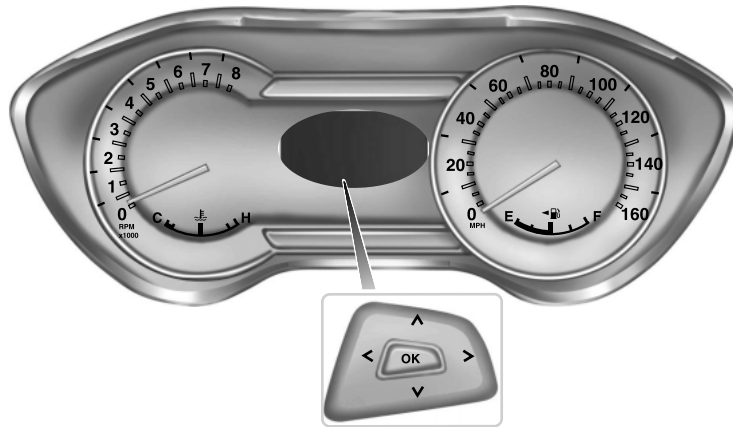
When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of

supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access the system data for any purpose other than as described by absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the sections on 911 Assist, Vehicle Health Report, and Traffic, Directions and Information.

Accessing and Adjusting Modes through Your Vehicle Information Display



E156609

MyLincoln Touch™

The display is located on the center of your instrument cluster. It allows you to view and make minor adjustments to active modes without taking your hands off the wheel. For example:

- In entertainment mode, you can view what is now playing, change the audio source, select presets and make some adjustments.
- In navigation mode (if equipped), you can view the current route or activate a route.
- In phone mode, you can accept or reject an incoming call.



E145982

Use the **OK** and arrow buttons on the right side of your steering wheel to scroll through the available modes.

The selection menu expands and different options appear.

- Press the up and down arrows to scroll through the modes.
- Press the right arrow to enter the mode.
- Press the left or right arrows to make adjustments within the chosen mode.
- Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, Compass appears in the display instead of Navigation. If you press the right arrow to go into the Compass menu, you can see the compass graphic. The compass displays the direction in which the vehicle is traveling, not true direction (for example, if the vehicle is traveling west, the middle of the compass graphic displays west; north displays to the left of west, though its true direction is to the right of west).*

Using Voice Recognition

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the lower left status bar indicating the status of the voice session (such as Listening, Success, Failed, Paused or Try Again).

How to Use Voice Commands with Your System



Press the voice icon. After the tone, speak your command clearly.

These commands can be said at any time during a voice session
"Cancel"
"Exit"
"Go back"
"List of commands"
"Main menu"
"Next page"
"Previous page"
"What can I say?"
"Help"

What Can I Say?

To access the available voice commands for the current session, do one of the following:

- During a voice session, press the help icon (?) in the lower left status bar of the screen.
- Say, "What can I say?" for an on-screen listing of the possible voice commands associated with your current voice session.
- Press the voice icon. After the tone, say, "Help" for an audible list of possible voice commands.

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.

- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice icon.

Accessing a List of Available Commands

- If you use the touchscreen, press the Settings icon > **Help** > **Voice Command List**.
- If you use the steering wheel control, press the voice icon. After the tone, speak your command clearly.

Available voice commands
"Audio list of commands"
"Bluetooth audio list of commands"
"Browse list of commands"
"CD list of commands"
"Climate control list of commands"
"List of commands"

Available voice commands
"Navigation list of commands" *
"Phone list of commands"
"Radio list of commands"
"SD card list of commands"
"Sirius satellite list of commands" **
"Travel link list of commands" *
"USB list of commands"
"Voice instructions list of commands"
"Voice settings list of commands"
"Help"

* This command is only available when your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, and the navigation system SD card is in the card slot.

** This command is only available when you have an active SIRIUS satellite radio subscription.

Voice Settings

Voice settings allow you to customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback. The system defaults to standard interaction that uses candidate lists and confirmation prompts as these provide the highest level of guidance and feedback.

- **Interaction Mode:** Novice mode provides detailed interaction and guidance while the advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
- **Confirmation Prompts:** The system uses these short questions to confirm your voice request. If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested. The system may still occasionally ask you to confirm settings.
- **Phone and Media Candidate Lists:** Candidate lists are lists of possible results from your voice commands. The system creates these lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command.

To access these settings using the touchscreen:

1. Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > then **Voice Control**.
2. Select from the following:
 - Interaction Mode
 - Confirmation Prompts
 - Media Candidate Lists
 - Phone Candidate Lists
 - Voice Control Volume.

To access these settings using voice commands:

1. Press the voice icon. Wait for the prompt "Please say a command". Another tone sounds to let you know the system is listening.
2. Say any of the following commands:

Voice settings using voice commands
"Confirmation prompts off"
"Confirmation prompts on"
"Interaction mode advanced"
"Interaction mode novice"

Voice settings using voice commands
"Media candidate lists off"
"Media candidate lists on"
"Phone candidate lists off"
"Phone candidate lists on"
"Help"

Using Voice Commands with the Touchscreen Options

Your voice system has a dual mode feature which allows you to switch between using voice commands and making on-screen selections. This is available only when the system displays a list of candidates generated during a voice session. For example, when entering in a street address or trying to call a contact from the phone you paired to the system.

Privacy Notice for GPS Mapping with MyLincoln Mobile in the United States and Canada

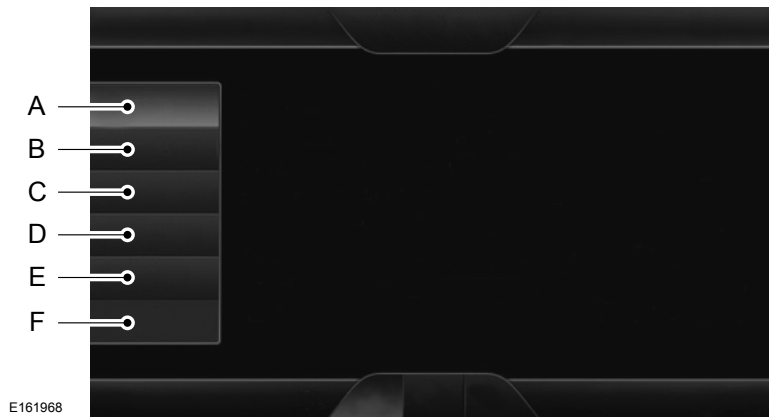
If your vehicle is equipped with available embedded modem (Reserve Package only), MyLincoln Mobile allows for GPS mapping when a vehicle is registered to a MyLincoln Mobile account. To remove the vehicle from the account, thereby removing GPS mapping ability, a Master Reset can be performed in the vehicle. See **Settings** (page 365).

Prior to transferring ownership of a vehicle, owners may choose to execute a Master Reset. It is recommended that new owners conduct a Master Reset upon taking possession of the vehicle to remove it from any existing MyLincoln Mobile accounts.

The new owner can download the MyLincoln Mobile app, and follow the registration and authorization process. For more information, visit:

Web Address
http://support.lincoln.com/owner-services/mylincoln-mobile-app

SETTINGS



- A Clock.
- B Display.
- C Sound.
- D Vehicle.
- E Settings.
- F Help.



Under this menu, you can set your clock, access and adjust the display, sound and vehicle settings as well as access settings for specific modes or the help feature.

Clock

Note: *You cannot manually set the date. Your vehicle's GPS does this for you.*

Note: *If the battery has been disconnected, your vehicle needs to acquire a GPS signal to update the clock. Once your vehicle acquires the signal, it may take a few minutes for the update to display the correct time.*



1. Press the Settings icon > **Clock**.
2. Press + and - to adjust the time.

From this screen, you can also make other adjustments such as 12-hour or 24-hour mode, activate GPS time synchronization and have the system automatically update new time zones.

You can also switch the outside air temperature display off and on. It appears at the top center of the touchscreen, next to the time and date.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Display

You can adjust the touchscreen display through the touchscreen or by pressing the voice button on your steering wheel controls and when prompted, say, "Display settings".



Press the Settings icon > **Display**, to access and make adjustments using the touchscreen.

- **Brightness** allows you to make the screen display brighter or dimmer.
- **Auto DIM**, when set to **On**, lets you use the Auto Dim Manual Offset feature. When set to **Off**, screen brightness does not change.

- **Mode** allows you to set the screen to a certain brightness or have the system automatically change based on the outside light level, or switch the display off.
 - If you select **AUTO** or **NIGHT**, you have the options of switching the display's Auto Dim feature on or off and changing the Auto Dim Manual Offset feature.
- **Auto Dim Manual Offset** allows you to adjust screen dimming as the outside lighting conditions change from day to night. This feature also allows you to adjust screen brightness using the instrument panel dimming control.
- **Edit Wallpaper**
 - You can have your touchscreen display the default photo or upload your own.

Uploading Photos for Your Home Screen Wallpaper

Note: You cannot load photos directly from your camera. You must access the photos either from your USB mass storage device or from an SD card.

Note: Photographs with extremely large dimensions (such as 2048 x 1536) may not be compatible and appear as a blank (black) image on the display.

Your system allows you to upload and view up to 32 photos.



To access, press the Settings icon > **Display** > **Edit Wallpaper**, and then follow the system prompts to upload your photographs.

Only photographs that meet the following conditions display:

- Compatible file formats are as follows: jpg, gif, png, bmp
- Each file must be 1.5 MB or less.
- Recommended dimensions: 800 x 384.

Sound



Press the **Settings** icon > **Sound**, then select from the following:

Sound
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
DSP
THX Deep Note Demo
Occupancy Mode
Speed Compensated Volume

Your vehicle may not have these sound settings.

Vehicle



Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle**, then select from the following:

- Ambient Lighting.
- Vehicle Health Report.
- Camera Settings.
- Enable Valet Mode.

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

When you switch this feature on, ambient lighting illuminates footwells and cupholders with a choice of colors. To access and make adjustments:



1. Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Ambient Lighting**.
2. Touch the desired color.
3. Use the scroll bar to increase or decrease the intensity.

To switch the feature on or off, press the power button.

Vehicle Health Report

Switch **Automatic Reminders** on and off and set the mileage interval at which you would like to receive the reports. Press ? for more information on these selections.

When done making your selections, press **Run Vehicle Health Report Now** if you want your report.

You can find more information on Vehicle Health Report in this chapter. See **Information** (page 405).

Camera Settings

This menu allows you to access settings for your camera settings.



Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Camera Settings**, then select from the following settings:

- Enhanced Park Aids.
- Rear Camera Delay.

You can find more information on the rear view camera in another chapter. See **Rear View Camera** (page 199).

Enable Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN. You can create your own four-digit PIN to lock and unlock the system.



1. Press the Settings icon > **Vehicle** > **Enable Valet Mode**.
2. Enter a four-digit PIN twice, as prompted.

After you press **Continue**, the system locks until you enter the PIN again.

Note: *If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, enter 3681 and the system unlocks.*

Settings

Access and adjust system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

System



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **System**, then select from the following:

System	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in English, Spanish or French.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.

MyLincoln Touch™

System	
System Prompt Volume	Adjust the volume of voice prompts from the system.
Touch Screen Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Touch Panel Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm button choices made through the climate or audio system.
Keyboard Layout	Have the touchscreen keyboard display in QWERTY or ABC format.
Install Applications	Install any downloaded applications or view the current software licenses.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

Voice Control



Press the Settings icon > **Settings**
> **Voice Control**, then select from
the following:

Voice control	
Interaction Mode	Standard interaction mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance. Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation Prompts	Have the system ask you short questions if it has not clearly heard or understood your request.
Media Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these switched off.

MyLincoln Touch™

Voice control	
Phone Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these switched off.
Voice Control Volume	This allows you to adjust the system's voice volume level.

Even with confirmation prompts switched off, the system may occasionally ask you to confirm settings.

Media Player



Press the Settings icon > **Settings**
> **Media Player**, then select from
the following:

Media player	
Autoplay	When this feature is on, the system automatically switches to the media source upon initial connection. This allows you to listen to music during the indexing process. When this feature is off, the system does not automatically switch to the inserted media source.
Bluetooth Devices	Select to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device. You can also set a device as your favorite so that the system automatically attempts to connect to that device at every ignition cycle.
Index Bluetooth Audio Devices	When this feature is on, the system automatically indexes media on your connected Bluetooth device.

MyLincoln Touch™

Media player	
Gracenote Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.
Gracenote Management	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies metadata information for your music files. This overrides information from your device. This feature defaults to off.
Cover Art Priority	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies cover art for your music files. This overrides any art from your device. This feature defaults to Media Player.

Navigation



Press the Settings icon > **Settings**
> **Navigation**, then select from the following:

Navigation	
Map Preferences	Switch breadcrumbs on and off.
	Have the system display your turn list top to bottom or bottom to top.
	Switch the Parking POI notification on and off.

MyLincoln Touch™

Navigation	
Route Preferences	Choose to have the system display the Shortest, Fastest or most Ecological route first. If you set Always Use Preferred Route to Yes , the system uses the selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination. Always Use Preferred Route bypasses route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on the preferred route setting. Eco Time Penalty allows you to select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.
	Have the system avoid freeways.
	Have the system avoid tollroads.
	Have the system avoid ferries or car trains.
	Have the system use HOV (high-occupancy vehicle) lanes.
Navigation Preferences	Have the system use guidance prompts.
	Have the system automatically fill in State/Province information.
Traffic Preferences	Have the system display areas where roadwork occurs.
	Have the system display incident icons.
	Have the system display areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.
	Have the system display areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.
	Have the system display any smog alerts.
	Have the system display weather warnings.

MyLincoln Touch™

Navigation	
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.
	Have the system turn on your radio for traffic announcements.
	Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically.
	Switch traffic alert notifications on and off.
	Have the system display accident icons.
	Have the system display traffic jam icons.
	Have the system display closed roads.
Avoid Areas	Enter specific areas that you would like to avoid on planned navigation routes.

Phone



Press the Settings icon > **Settings**
> **Phone**, then select from the
following:

MyLincoln Touch™

Phone	
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	Switch Bluetooth on and off.
Do Not Disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring inside your vehicle. With this feature switched on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside your vehicle.
911 Assist	Switch on or switch off the 911 Assist feature. See Information (page 405).
Phone Ringer	Select the type of notification for phone calls - ring tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Text Message Notification	Select the type of notification for text messages - alert tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Internet Data Connection	If compatible with your phone, you can adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to switch off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press ? for more information.
Manage Phonebook	Access features, such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	Have the system alert you when in Roaming mode.

MyLincoln Touch™

Wireless & Internet

Your system has a Wi-Fi feature that creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (such as personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files or

play games. Using this Wi-Fi feature, everyone in your vehicle can also gain access the internet if you have a USB mobile broadband connection inside your vehicle, your phone supports personal area networking and if you park outside a wireless hotspot.



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Wireless & Internet**, then select from the following:

Wi-Fi	
Wi-Fi Settings	Wi-Fi Network (Client) Mode turns the Wi-Fi feature on and off in your vehicle. Make sure you switch it on for connectivity purposes.
	Choose a Wireless Network allows you to use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, priority and signal strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network.
	Gateway (Access Point) Mode makes SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer when switched on. This forms the local area network within your vehicle for things such as, game playing, file transfer and internet browsing. Press ? for more information.
	Gateway (Access Point) Settings allows you to view and change settings for using SYNC as the internet gateway.
	Gateway (Access Point) Device List allows you to view recent connections to your Wi-Fi system.

MyLincoln Touch™

Wi-Fi	
USB Mobile Broadband	Instead of using Wi-Fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. (You must switch on your mobile broadband device on your personal computer before connecting it to the system.) This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection. (USB mobile broadband settings may not display if the device is already on.) You can select the following: Country, Carrier, Phone Number, User Name and Password.
Bluetooth Settings	Shows you the currently paired devices as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device. Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG.
Prioritize Connection Methods	Choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to Change Order and have the system either always attempt to connect using a USB mobile broadband or using Wi-Fi.



The Wi-Fi
CERTIFIED
Logo is a

Help



Press the Settings icon > **Help**,
then select from the following:

E142626

certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

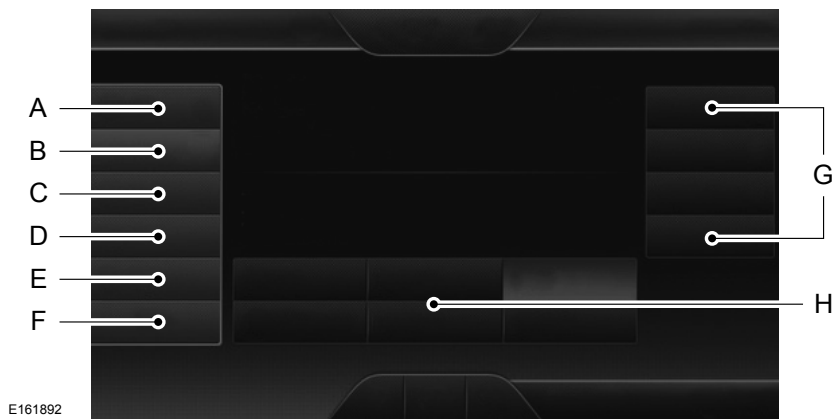
MyLincoln Touch™

Help	
Where Am I?	View your vehicle's current location if your vehicle is equipped with navigation. If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, you do not see this button.
System Information	Touchscreen system serial number
	Your vehicle identification number (VIN)
	Touchscreen system software version
	Navigation system version
	Map database version
	Sirius satellite radio ESN
	Gracenote Database Information and Library version
Software Licenses	View the licenses for any software and applications installed on your system.
Driving Restrictions	Certain features are not accessible when your vehicle is moving.
911 Assist	Switch on and switch off the 911 Assist feature. See Information (page 405). In Case of Emergency (ICE) Quick Dial: allows you to save up to two numbers as ICE contacts for quick access if there is an emergency. Select Edit to access your phonebook and then select the desired contacts. The numbers then appear as options on this screen for the ICE 1 and ICE 2 buttons. The ICE contacts you select appear at the end of the 911 Assist call process.
Voice Command List	View categorized lists of voice commands.

To access Help using the voice commands, press the voice button, then, after the tone,

say "Help". The system provides allowable voice commands for the current mode.

ENTERTAINMENT



- A AM 1 and AM AST
- B FM 1, FM 2 and FM AST
- C SIRIUS

- D CD
- E USB
- F Touch this button to scroll down for more options, such as SD Card, BT Stereo and Line In
- G These buttons change with the media mode you are in.
- H Radio memory presets and CD controls.

Note: *Some features may not be available in your area. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.*

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Browsing Device Content

When listening to audio on a device, you can browse through other devices without having to change sources. For example, if you are currently listening to audio on an SD card, you can browse all the artists that are stored on your USB device.



Press the voice icon on the steering wheel. When prompted, you can say:

"BROWSE" within devices
"Browse"
"Browse <league> games"
"Browse <Sirius category> channels"
"Browse SD card"
"Browse Sirius channel guide"

"BROWSE" within devices
"Browse USB"
"Help"

If you only say, "Browse", you can then say any commands in the following chart.

This command is only usable if you have an active subscription to Sirius satellite radio.

"BROWSE"
"<League> Games"
"<Sirius category> channels"
"SD card"

"BROWSE"
"Sirius Channel Guide"
"USB"
"Help"

This command is only usable if you have an active subscription to Sirius satellite radio.

For more commands in SD card or USB mode, see the "SD Card and USB Port" section of this chapter.

Your voice system allows you to change audio sources with a simple voice command. For example, if you are listening to music on a USB device, then want to switch to a satellite radio channel, simply press the voice button on the steering wheel controls and say the name of the Sirius station (such as, "the Highway"). The following voice commands are available at the top level of the voice session no matter which current audio source you are listening to (such as a USB device or Sirius satellite radio).

Note: This is only available when your MyFord Touch system language is set to North American English.

Sample commands
"<87.9-107.9>"
"<530-1710>"
"<Channel name>"
"AM <530-1710>"
"FM <87.9-107.9>"
"Play [album] <name>"
"Play [artist] <name>"
"Play [genre] <name>"
"Play [playlist] <name>"
"Play [song] <name>"
"Play <name>"

Sample commands
"Play <name (song or album)> by <artist name>"
"Sirius <0-223>"
"Sports games"

This command is only usable if you have an active subscription to Sirius satellite radio.

The commands that have [] around the word means that the word is optional. For example, if you say, "Play Metallica", this is the same as the voice command, "Play [artist] <name>".

AM/FM Radio



Touch the **AM** or **FM** tab to listen to the radio.

To change between AM and FM presets, just touch the **AM** or **FM** tab.

Memory Presets

Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished.

HD Radio

Touch this button to turn HD Radio on. The light on the button illuminates when the feature is on. HD Radio allows you to receive radio broadcasts digitally, where available, providing free, crystal-clear sound. See HD Radio information later in this chapter.

Scan

Touch this button to go to the next strong AM or FM radio station. The light on the button illuminates when the feature is on.

Options

Sound Settings

Touch this button to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange

- Treble
- Balance and Fade
- THX Deep Note Demo
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)
- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Set PTY for Seek/Scan

This allows you to select a category of music you would like to search for. You can then choose to either seek or scan for the stations playing that category.

RDS Text Display

This allows you to view the information broadcast by FM stations.

AST

AST (Autostore) allows you to have the system automatically store the six strongest stations in your current location.

TAG Button

This feature is available when HD Radio is on, and allows you to tag a song to download later. When you select On, **TAG** appears on-screen when HD Radio is active. You can touch **TAG** to save the information of the song that is playing. When you plug in your portable music player, the information transfers, if supported by your device. When you are connected to iTunes®, the tags appear to remind you of the songs you would like to download. See HD Radio information later in this chapter.

Direct Tune

Touch this button to enter the desired station number manually. Touch **Enter** when you are done.

HD Radio™ Information (If Available)

Note: *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit www.hdradio.com.

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:



E142616

The HD Radio logo either blinks when acquiring a digital station, and then stays solid when digital audio is playing, or is grey when acquiring a digital station, and then changes to orange when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

TAG allows you to save a song to download later when you are on an acquired HD Radio station and the feature is on. To turn the feature on and use it:

1. Press **AM** or **FM** > **Options** > **TAG Button** > **On**.
2. When you hear a song you like, touch **TAG**.
3. The system automatically saves the song's information and transfers it to your portable music player (if supported) when you connect it to the system. The system automatically transfers the tag to your player (if already connected) and a pop-up confirms the transfer.
4. When you access iTunes with your portable music player, the tags appear to you as a reminder. The system allows you to tag up to approximately 100 songs. For a list of devices that support tagging, see www.SYNCMYRide.com, www.SYNCMYRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

MyLincoln Touch™

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

- **Scan** allows you to hear a brief sampling of all available stations. This feature still works when HD Radio reception is on, although it does not scan for HD2-HD7 channels. You may see the HD logo appear if the station has a digital broadcast.

- **Memory presets** allow you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

Note: *As with any saved radio station, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system switches back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

MyLincoln Touch™

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio

technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Potential station issues		
Issues	Cause	Action
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or Direct Tune .	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.

MyLincoln Touch™

Potential station issues		
Issues	Cause	Action
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.
HD2-HD7 stations not found when Scan is pressed.	Pressing Scan disables HD2-HD7 channel search.	No action required. This is normal behavior.

http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to the radio, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to the radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "Radio", then any of the following commands.

"RADIO"
"<87.9-107.9>"
"<87.9-107.9> HD" ¹
"<530-1710>"
"AM"
"AM <530-1710>"
"AM autose"t"
"AM autose"t preset <#>"
"AM prese"t <#>"

MyLincoln Touch™

"RADIO"
"Browse" ²
"FM"
"FM <87.9-107.9>"
"FM <87.9-107.9> HD <#>" ¹
"FM autosest"
"FM autosest preset <#>"
"FM preset <#>"
"FM 1"
"FM 1 preset <#>"
"FM 2"
"FM 2 preset <#>"
"HD <#>" ¹
"Preset <#>"
"Radio off"
"Radio on"

"RADIO"
"Set PTY"
"Tune" ³
"Help"

¹ If available.

² If you have said "Browse", see the "Browse" chart later in this section.

³ If you have said "Tune", see the following "Tune" chart.

"TUNE"
"<530-1710>"
"<87.9-107.9>"
"<87.9-107.9> HD <#>"
"AM"
"AM <530-1710>"
"AM autosest"

"TUNE"
"AM autosest preset <#>"
"AM preset <#>"
"FM"
"FM <87.9-107.9>"
"FM <87.9-107.9> HD <#>"
"FM autosest"
"FM autosest preset <#>"
"FM preset <#>"
"FM 1"
"FM 1 preset <#>"
"FM 2"
"FM 2 preset <#>"
"HD <#>"

"TUNE"
"Preset <#>"
"Help"

If available.

Sirius® Satellite Radio (If Activated)



Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select the **SIRIUS** tab.

Memory Presets

Save a channel by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the channel. Sound returns when finished.

ALERT

Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel.

Replay

Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you have remained tuned to the current station. Changing stations erases the previous audio.

While in replay mode:

- Press and release the seek buttons to hear the previous or next song.
- Press and hold the seek buttons to reverse or fast forward in the current track.
- Press play or pause to play or pause the audio.
- Press **Replay** to return to live audio if you have been using the feature to replay audio.

Scan

Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of channels.

Options

Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings.

Sound Settings

Touch this button to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange
- Treble
- Balance and Fade
- THX Deep Note Demo
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)
- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Set Category for Seek/Scan

This allows you to select a category of music you would like to search for. You can then choose to either seek or scan for the stations playing that category.

Parental Lockout

This allows you to lock and unlock channels, change or reset your PIN or unlock all channels. To use this feature, you need your initial PIN, which is 1234.

Artist/Title/Team Alerts

This feature allows you to select Artists, Titles and Teams that you would like the system to alert you to when they are playing on other channels. Press Edit Alerts to delete or turn off alerts. You can also set all alerts to on or off. When an alert appears on the screen, you can choose to Tune to the channel, to Cancel the alert or to Disable Alerts. If you are listening to a sporting event, you can save your favorite teams so that the system can alert you when they are playing on a satellite radio channel.

Note: *Sirius does not support the Alert feature on all channels. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for Alert feature variation.*

Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. The ESN is on the System Information Screen (SR ESN:XXXXXXXXXXXX). To access your ESN, touch the bottom left corner of the touchscreen. Touch **SIRIUS > Options**.

Direct Tune

Touch this button to enter the desired satellite channel number manually. Touch **Enter** when you are done.

Browse

Touch this button to view a list of all available stations. Scroll to see more categories. Touch the station you want to listen to.

Touch **Skip** if you want to skip this channel.

Touch **Lock** if you do not want anyone to listen to this channel.

Touch **Title** or **Artist** to see song and artists on other stations.

Sirius Satellite Radio Information

Note: *Sirius reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.*



E142593

Sirius satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed Sirius satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term that begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a list of Sirius satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.sirius.ca in Canada, or call Sirius at 1-888-539-7474.

Note: *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

MyLincoln Touch™

Sirius Satellite Radio Reception Factors and Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other materials as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING... to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

Troubleshooting tips		
Radio display	Cause	Action
Acquiring...	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Sat Fault/Sirius System Failure.	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel.	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.

MyLincoln Touch™

Troubleshooting tips		
Radio display	Cause	Action
Unsubscribed Channel.	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact Sirius at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal.	The signal is lost from the Sirius satellite or Sirius tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating.	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Call Sirius 1-888-539-7474.	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact Sirius at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found. Check Channel Guide.	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
Subscription Updated.	Sirius has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

Sirius Satellite Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to Sirius satellite radio, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to Sirius satellite radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "Sirius", then any of the following commands.

"SIRIUS"
"<Channel name>"
"Preset <#>"
"SAT"

MyLincoln Touch™

"SIRIUS"
"SAT preset <#>"
"SAT 1"
"SAT 1 Preset <#>"
"SAT 2"
"SAT 2 preset <#>"
"SAT 3"
"SAT 3 preset <#>"
"Sirius <0-223>"
"Sirius off"
"Sirius on"
"Sports game"

"SIRIUS"
"Tune"
"Help"

If you have said "Sports game", see the following "Sports game" chart.

If you have said "Tune", see the following "Tune" chart.

"SPORTS GAME"
"Tune to the <college name> game"
"Tune to the <team city> game"
"Tune to the <team city> <team name> game"
"Tune to the <team name> game"
"Help"

"TUNE"
"<Channel Name>"
"Preset <#>"
"SAT"
"SAT 1"
"SAT 1 preset <#>"
"SAT 2"
"SAT 2 preset <#>"
"SAT 3"
"SAT 3 preset <#>"
"Sirius <0-223>"
"Help"

CD



Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select the CD tab.

You can also advance and reverse the current track or current folder, if applicable.

Repeat

Touch this button to repeat the currently playing track, all tracks on the disc or turn the feature off if already on.

Shuffle

Touch this button to play the tracks or entire albums in random order, or turn the feature off if already on.

Scan

Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of all available tracks.

More Info

Touch this button to see disc information.

Options

Sound Settings

Touch this button to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange
- Treble
- Balance and Fade
- THX Deep Note Demo
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)
- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Compression

Touch this button to turn the compression feature off and on.

Browse

Touch this button to look through all available CD tracks.

CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "CD", then any of the following commands.

"CD"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play next track"
"Play previous track"
"Play track <1-512>"
"Repeat"
"Repeat folder"
"Repeat off"
"Repeat track"
"Shuffle"
"Shuffle CD"
"Shuffle folder"

"CD"
"Shuffle off"
"Help"

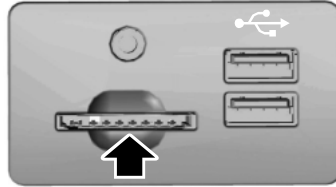
This applies to WMA or MP3 files only.

SD Card Slot and USB Port

SD Card

Note: Your SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, press the card in and the system ejects it. Do not attempt to pull the card to remove it as this could cause damage.

Note: The navigation system also uses this card slot. See **Navigation** (page 420).



E175710

The SD card slot is under a small access door at the front of the floor console. To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select **SD Card** from the list on the left side of the screen.

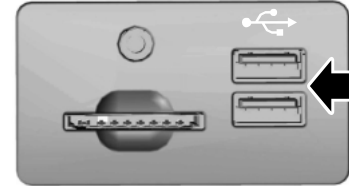
SD



E142620

logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

USB Port



E175711

The USB ports are under a small access door at the front of the floor console. To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select **USB** from the list on the left side of the screen.

This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Playing Music from Your Device

Note: The system is capable of indexing up to 30,000 songs.



Insert your device and select the **SD Card** or **USB** tab once the system recognizes it. You can then select from the following options:

Repeat

This feature replays the currently playing song or album.

Shuffle

Touch this button to play music on the selected album or folder in random order.

Similar Music

This feature allows you to choose music similar to what is currently playing.

More Info

Touch this button to see disc information such as current track, artist name, album and genre.

Options

Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings.

Sound Settings allows you to adjust settings for:

- Bass
- Midrange
- Treble
- Balance and Fade
- THX Deep Note Demo
- DSP (Digital Signal processing)
- Occupancy Mode
- Speed Compensated Volume.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Media Player Settings allows you to select more settings, which is under Media Player. See **Settings** (page 365).

Device Information displays software and firmware information about the currently connected media device.

Update Media Index indexes your device when you connect it for the first time and each time the content changes (such as adding or removing tracks) to make sure you have the latest voice commands available for all media on the device.

Browse

This feature allows you to view the contents of the device. It also allows you to search by categories, such as genre, artist or album.

If you want to view song information such as Title, Artist, File, Folder, Album, and Genre, touch the on-screen album art.

You can also touch **What's Playing** to hear how the system pronounces the current band and song. This can be helpful when using voice commands to make sure the system correctly plays your request.

SD Card and USB Voice Commands



If you are listening to a USB device or an SD card, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to a USB device or an SD card, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "USB" or "SD card", then any of the following commands.

"USB" or "SD CARD"
"Browse"
"Next"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play album <name>"
"Play all"
"Play artist <name>"
"Play audiobook <name>"
"Play author <name>"
"Play composer <name>"
"Play folder <name>"
"Play genre <name>"
"Play playlist <name>"
"Play podcast <name>"
"Play podcast episode <name>"

"USB" or "SD CARD"
"Play similar music"
"Play song <name>"
"Previous"
"Repeat all"
"Repeat off"
"Repeat one"
"Shuffle"
"Shuffle album"
"Shuffle off"
"What's this?"
"Help"

If you have said you would like to browse your USB or SD card, the system prompts you to specify what you would like to browse. When prompted, see the following "Browse" chart.

"BROWSE"
"Album <name>"
"All albums"
"All artists"
"All audiobooks"
"All authors"
"All composers"
"All folders"
"All genres"
"All playlists"
"All podcasts"
"All songs"
"Artist <name>"
"Audiobook <name>"
"Author <name>"
"Composer <name>"

"BROWSE"
"Folder <name>"
"Genre <name>"
"Playlist <name>"
"Podcast <name>"
"Help"

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, Zune, plays from device players, and most USB drives. Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC.

It is also able to organize your indexed media from your playing device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC may classify the empty metadata tags as **Unknown**.

Bluetooth Audio

Your system allows you to stream audio over your vehicle's speakers from your connected, Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.



To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select the **BT Stereo** tab.

Bluetooth Audio Voice Commands



If you are listening to a Bluetooth audio device, press the voice button on the steering wheel control. When prompted, say "Next song", "Pause", "Play" or "Previous song".

If you are not listening to a Bluetooth audio device, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "Next song", "Pause", "Play" or "Previous song".

Line In (Auxiliary Input Jack)

WARNINGS



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury.

We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

WARNINGS

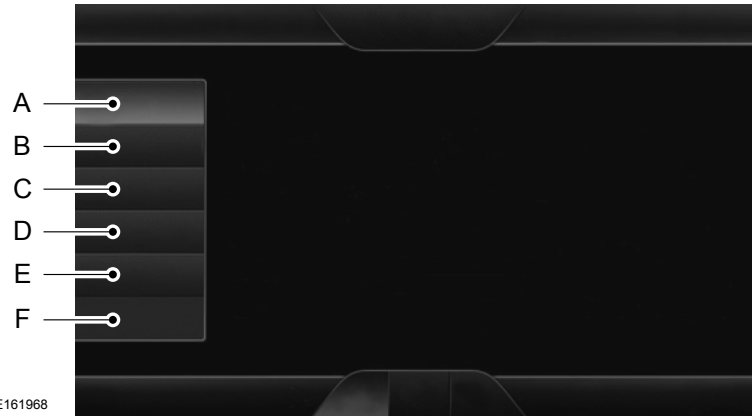


Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.

The auxiliary input jack allows you to connect and play music from your portable music player through your vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. Your audio extension cable must have male 1/8th-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at each end.

1. Switch off the engine, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position **P**.
2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the auxiliary input jack.
3. Switch the radio on. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Switch your portable music player on and adjust its volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press **AUX** until **LINE** or **LINE IN** appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the **AUX** and **FM** or **CD** controls.

PHONE



E161968

- A Phone
- B Quick Dial
- C Phonebook
- D History
- E Messaging
- F Settings

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. Once you pair your phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

To check your phone's compatibility, see your device's manual and visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

Pairing Your Phone for the First Time

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The first thing you must do to use the phone features of SYNC is to pair your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone with SYNC. This allows you to use your phone in a hands-free manner.

Note: *Put the transmission in park (P). Switch on your vehicle ignition and the radio.*

1. Touch **Add Phone** in the upper left corner of the touchscreen. **Find SYNC** appears on the screen, and instructs you to begin the pairing process from your device.
2. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cellular phone is in the proper mode. See your device's manual if necessary.

Note: *Select **SYNC**, and a six-digit PIN appears on your device.*

3. If prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.
4. When prompted on your phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cellular phone.
5. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

SYNC may prompt you with more phone options. For more information on your phone's capability, see your device's manual and visit the website.

Pairing Subsequent Phones

Note: Put the transmission in park (P). Switch on your vehicle ignition and the radio.

1. Press the **Phone** corner of the touchscreen > **Settings** > **BT Devices** > **Add Device**.
2. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cellular phone is in the proper mode. See your device's manual if necessary.

Note: Select **SYNC**, and a six-digit PIN appears on your device.

3. If prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.
4. When prompted on your phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cellular phone.
5. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

SYNC may prompt you with more phone options. For more information on your phone's capability, see your device's manual and visit the website.

Making Calls



Press the voice button on your steering wheel controls. When prompted, say, "Call <name>" or say "Dial", then the desired number.



To end the call or exit phone mode, press and hold this phone button on your steering wheel controls.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Call information appears in the display if it is available.



Accept the call by pressing **Accept** on the touchscreen or by pressing this phone button on your steering wheel controls.



Reject the call by pressing **Reject** on the touchscreen or by pressing and holding this phone button on your steering wheel controls.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC logs it as a missed call.

Phone Menu Options

Press the top left corner on your touchscreen to select from the following options:

Phone

Touch this button to access the on-screen numerical pad to enter a number and place a call. During an active call, you can also choose to:

- Mute the call.
- Put the call on hold.
- Turn on the privacy feature.
- Join two calls.
- End the call.

Quick Dial

Set up favorite contacts from your phonebook or history folder.

Phonebook

Touch this button to access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phone book. The system places the entries in alphabetical categories summarized at the top of the screen.

To switch on contact picture settings, if your device supports this feature, press **Phone > Settings > Manage Phonebook > Download photos from Phonebook > On**.

History

After you connect your Bluetooth-enabled phone to SYNC, you can access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. You can also choose to save these to your Favorites or to Quick Dial.

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature. If your phone does not support downloading call history using Bluetooth, SYNC keeps track of calls made with the SYNC system.*

Messaging

Send text messages using your touchscreen. See **Text messaging** later in this section.

Settings

Touch this button to access various phone settings, such as turning Bluetooth on and off, managing your phonebook and more. See **Phone settings** later in this section.

Text Messaging

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are phone-dependent features.*

Note: *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).*

Note: *SYNC does not download read text messages from your phone.*

You can send and receive text messages using Bluetooth, read them aloud and translate text messaging acronyms, such as LOL.

1. Touch the top left corner of the display to access the **Phone** menu.
2. Select **Messaging**.
3. Choose from the following:
 - Listen (speaker icon).
 - Dial.
 - Send Text.
 - View.
 - Delete.

Composing a Text Message

Note: *This is a speed-dependent feature. It is unavailable when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).*

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are phone-dependent features.*

1. Touch the top left corner of the display to access the **Phone** menu.
2. Touch **Messaging > Send Text**.
3. Enter a phone number or choose from your phonebook.

4. You can select from the following options:

- **Send**, which sends the message as it is.
- **Edit Text**, which allows you to customize the pre-defined message or create a message on your own.

You can then preview the message, verify the recipient as well as update the message list.

Text message options
I'll call you back in a few minutes.
I just left, I'll be there soon.
Can you give me a call?
I'm on my way.
I'm running a few minutes late.
I'm ahead of schedule, so I'll be there early.
I'm outside.
I'll call you when I get there.
OK

Text message options
Yes
No
Thanks
Stuck in traffic.
Call me later.
LOL

Receiving a Text Message

Note: *If you select View and your vehicle is traveling over 3 mph (5 km/h), the system offers to read the message to you instead of allowing you to view it while driving.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your phone. You can press:

- **View** to view the text message.
- **Listen** for SYNC to read the message to you.

- **Dial** to call the contact.
- **Ignore** to exit the screen.

Phone Settings

Press **Phone > Settings**.

Bluetooth Devices

Touch this tab to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.

Bluetooth

Touch this tab to turn Bluetooth off or on.

Do Not Disturb

Touch this tab if you want all calls to go directly to your voice mail and not ring in the vehicle. When this feature is on, text message notifications do not ring inside the cabin either.

911 Assist

Switch on or switch off the 911 Assist feature. See **Information** (page 405).

Phone Ringer

Select the ring tone you want to hear when you receive a call. Choose from possible system ring tones, your currently paired phone's ring tone, a beep, text-to-speech or a silent notification.

Text Message Notification

Select a text message notification, if supported by your phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent.

Internet Data Connection

If your phone is compatible, use this screen to adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to switch off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press ? for more information.

Manage Phonebook

Touch this button to access features such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.

Roaming Warning

Touch this button to have the system alert you when your phone is in roaming mode.

Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

"PHONE"
"Call"
"Call <name>"
"Call <name> at home"
"Call <name> at work"

"PHONE"
"Call <name> on cell"
"Call <name> on other"
"Call voicemail"
"Dial"
"Do not disturb off"
"Do not disturb on"
"Forward text messages"
"Go to hands free"
"Hold call off"
"Hold on"
"Join calls"
"Listen to text message <#>"
"Listen to text messages"
"Messages"

MyLincoln Touch™

"PHONE"
"Mute call"
"Pair phone"
"Privacy on"
"Read text message"
"Reply to text messages"
"Turn ringer off"

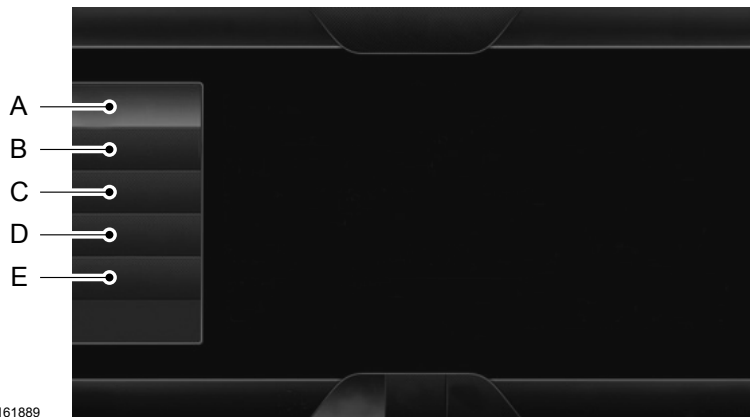
"PHONE"
"Turn ringer on"
"Unmute call"
"Help"

This command is only available during an active call.

If you say "Messages", see the following "Messages" chart for additional commands.

"MESSAGES"
"Call"
"Forward text messages"
"Listen to text message <#>"
"Listen to text messages"
"Reply to text messages"
"Help"

INFORMATION



E161889

- A SYNC Services
- B Sirius Travel Link
- C Alerts
- D Calendar
- E SYNC Applications

Under the Information menu, you can access features such as:

- SYNC Services
- Sirius Travel Link
- Alerts
- Calendar
- SYNC Applications



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, press the **Information** button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, press the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

SYNC Services (If Equipped, United States Only)

Note: SYNC Services varies by trim level and model year and may require a subscription. Traffic alerts and turn-by-turn directions available in select markets. Message and data rates may apply. Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change or discontinue this product service at any time without prior notification or incurring any future obligation.

Note: SYNC Services requires activation before use. Visit www.SYNCMyRide.com to register and check your eligibility for complimentary services. Standard phone and message rates may apply. Subscription may be required. You must also have the active SYNC Services Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone paired and connected to the system in order to connect to, and use, SYNC Services. See **Phone** (page 398).

Note: This feature does not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your cellular phone. Make sure your cellular phone is not blocking caller ID before using SYNC Services.

Note: The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle, and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features provided are only an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of errors, changes in roads, traffic conditions or driving conditions.

Note: When you connect, the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect your vehicle's current location, travel direction and speed to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. Further, to provide the services you request, for continuous improvement, the service may collect and record call details and voice communications. For more information, see SYNC Services Terms and Conditions at www.SYNCMYRide.com. If you do not want Ford or its service providers to collect your vehicle travel information or other information identified in the Terms and Conditions, do not subscribe or use the service.

SYNC Services uses advanced vehicle sensors, integrated GPS technology and comprehensive map and traffic data, to give you personalized traffic reports, precise turn-by-turn directions, business search, news, sports, weather and more. For a complete list of services, or to learn more, please visit www.SYNCMYRide.com.

Connecting to SYNC Services Using Voice Commands



1. Press the voice button.
2. When prompted, say "Services". This initiates an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.
3. Once you connect to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service, such as "Traffic" or "Directions". You can also say, "What are my choices?" to receive a list of available services from which to choose.
4. Say, "Services" to return to the Services main menu or for help, say, "Help".

Connecting to SYNC Services Using the Touchscreen



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, press the **Information** button.

If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, press the green tab on your touchscreen.

1. Select **Connect to Services** to initiate an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your phone.
2. Once connected, follow the voice prompts to request your desired Service, such as "Traffic" or "Directions". You can also say, "What are my choices?" to receive a list of available services from which to choose.
3. Say, "Services" to return to the Services main menu or for help, say, "Help".

Receiving Turn-by-Turn Directions

1. When connected to SYNC Services, say "Directions" or "Business search". To find the closest business or type of business to your current location, just say "Business search" and then "Search near me". If you need further assistance in finding a location you can say "Operator" at any time within a Directions or Business search to speak with a live operator. The system may prompt you to

Speak with an operator when it has difficulty matching your voice request. The live operator can assist you by searching for businesses by name or by category, residential addresses by street address or by name or specific street intersections. Operator Assist is a feature of your SYNC Services subscription. For more information on Operator Assist, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com/support.

2. Follow the voice prompts to select your Destination. After the route download is finished, the phone call automatically ends.

If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation:

- Turn-by-turn directions appear in the information display, in the status bar of your touchscreen system and on the SYNC Services screen. You also receive driving instructions from audible prompts.
- When on an active route, you can select **Route Summary** or **Route Status** using the touchscreen controls or voice commands to view the **Route Summary Turn List** or the **Route Status ETA**. You can also turn voice guidance on or off, cancel the route or update the route.

If you miss a turn, SYNC automatically asks if you want the route updated. Just say, "Yes" when prompted and the system delivers a new route to your vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, SYNC Services downloads your requested destination to the navigation system. The navigation system then calculates the route and provides driving instructions. See **Navigation** (page 420).

Disconnecting from SYNC Services

1. Press and hold the hang-up phone button on the steering wheel.
2. Say "Good-bye" from the SYNC Services main menu.

SYNC Services quick tips	
Personalizing	You can personalize your Services feature to provide quicker access to your most used or favorite information. You can save address points, such as work or home. You can also save favorite information like sports teams, such as Detroit Lions, or a news category. You can learn more about personalization by logging onto www.SYNCMyRide.com .
Push to interrupt	Press the voice button at any time (while connected to SYNC Services) to interrupt a voice prompt or an audio clip (such as a sports report) and say your voice command.
Portable	Your subscription is associated with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone number, not your VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). You can pair and connect your phone to any vehicle equipped with SYNC Services and continue enjoying your personalized services.

SYNC Services Voice Commands



When a route has been downloaded (non-navigation systems), press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

"SERVICES"
"Cancel route"
"Navigation voice off"
"Navigation voice on"
"Next turn"
"Route status"
"Route summary"

"SERVICES"
"Services"
"Update route"
"Help"

Sirius Travel Link (If Equipped)

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: In order to use Sirius Travel Link, your vehicle must be equipped with navigation and your navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot.

Note: A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to www.siriusxm.com/travellink for more information.

Note: Visit www.siriusxm.com/traffic# and click on Coverage map and details for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by Sirius Travel Link.

Note: Neither Sirius nor Ford is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the Sirius Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.

When you subscribe to Sirius Travel Link, it can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see scores to current sports games.



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Traffic On Route and Traffic Nearby

Touch these buttons to identify traffic incidents on your route, nearby your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places, if programmed.

Fuel Prices

Touch this button to view fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.

Movie Listings

Touch this button to view nearby movie theaters and their show times, if available.

Weather

Touch this button to view the nearby weather, current weather, or the five day forecast for the chosen area. Select **Map** to see the weather map, which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds. Select **Area** to select from a listing of weather locations.

Sports Info

Touch this button to view scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.

Ski Conditions

Touch this button to view ski conditions for a specific area.

Sirius Travel Link Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

"SIRIUS TRAVEL LINK"
"5-day weather forecast"
"Fuel prices"
"Movie listings"
"Sports headlines"
"Sports schedules"
"Sports scores"
"Traffic"
"Weather"

"SIRIUS TRAVEL LINK"
"Weather map"
"Help"

If you say "Sports headlines", "Sports schedules" or "Sports scores", you can then say any of the commands in the following chart.

Sports-related Commands
"Baseball"
"College basketball"
"College football"
"Golf"
"MLS"
"My teams"
"NBA"
"NFL"
"NHL"

Sports-related Commands
"WNBA"
"Help"

If you want to hear headlines, schedules or scores from a particular sport, or your favorite team(s), say the sport (or team), then "headlines", "schedules" or "scores".

Additional sports-related voice commands
"Baseball headlines"
"Baseball schedule"
"Baseball scores"
"College basketball headlines"
"College basketball schedule"
"College basketball scores"
"College football headlines"
"College football schedule"
"College football scores"

Additional sports-related voice commands
"Golf headlines"
"Golf leaderboard"
"Golf schedule"
"MLS headlines"
"MLS schedule"
"MLS scores"
"Motor sports headlines"
"Motor sports order"
"Motor sports schedule"
"My team headlines"
"My teams schedule"
"My teams scores"
"NBA headlines"
"NBA schedule"
"NBA scores"
"NFL headlines"

Additional sports-related voice commands
"NFL schedule"
"NFL scores"
"NHL headlines"
"NHL schedule"
"NHL scores"
"WNBA headlines"
"WNBA schedule"
"WNBA scores"
"Help"

Alerts



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Press **Alerts**, and then choose from any of the following services:

- **View** the complete message
- **Delete** the message
- **Delete All** messages

This screen displays any system messages (such as an SD card fault).

Note: *The system alerts you to any messages by turning the information icon yellow. After you read or delete the messages, the icon returns to white.*

Calendar



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Press **Calendar**. You can view the current calendar by day, week or month.

911 Assist (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help, which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.



Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time, which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone, which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user turns 911 Assist on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is turned off, either a voice message plays or a display message (or icon) comes on (or both) when your vehicle is started after a previously paired phone connects.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excludes knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, visit www.SYNCMYride.com, www.SYNCMYride.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 47). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 249). Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

Setting 911 Assist On



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Touch **Apps > 911 Assist**, then select **On**.



You can also access 911 Assist by:

- Pressing the Settings icon > **Settings > Phone > 911 Assist**, or
- Pressing the Settings icon > **Help > 911 Assist**.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the United States, Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (which would trigger 911 Assist); however, SYNC tries to contact emergency services if 911 Assist triggers. If a connected phone sustains damage or loses connection to SYNC, SYNC searches for, and tries to connect to, any available previously paired phone and tries to make the call to 911.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phones(s) previously paired or connected to the system are thrown from the vehicle.

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you turn on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically

or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

Vehicle Health Report (If Equipped)

WARNING



Always follow scheduled maintenance instructions, regularly inspect your vehicle, and seek repair for any damage or problem you suspect. Vehicle Health Report supplements, but cannot replace, normal maintenance and vehicle inspection. Vehicle Health Report only monitors certain systems electronically monitored by your vehicle and will not monitor or report the status of any other system, (such as brake lining wear). Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

Note: This feature is only available in the United States.

Note: Your Vehicle Health Report feature requires activation prior to use. Visit www.SYNCMYRide.com to register. There is no fee or subscription associated with Vehicle Health Report, but you must register to use this feature.

Note: This feature may not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your cellular phone. Before running a report, review the Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice.

Note: In order to allow a break-in period for your vehicle, you may not be able to create a Vehicle Health Report until your vehicle odometer has reached 200 miles.

Note: Cellular phone and SMS charges may apply when making a report.

Register for Vehicle Health Report and set your report preferences at www.SYNCMYRide.com. After registering, you can request a Vehicle Health Report (inside your vehicle). Return to your account at www.SYNCMYRide.com to view your report. You can also choose for SYNC to remind you automatically to run reports at specific mileage intervals. Cellular phone airtime usage may apply when reporting.

The system allows you to check your vehicle's overall health in the form of a diagnostic report card. The Vehicle Health Report contains valuable information, such as:

- Vehicle diagnostic information
- Scheduled maintenance
- Open recalls and Field Service Actions
- Items noted during vehicle inspections by your authorized dealer that still need servicing.

Making a Report



If you want to run a report by using the touchscreen, touch **Apps > Vehicle Health Report**.



To run a report by voice command, press the voice button on the steering wheel and, when prompted, say "Vehicle health report".

Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice

When you create a Vehicle Health Report, Ford Motor Company may collect your cellular phone number (to process your report request) and diagnostic information about your vehicle. Certain versions or updates to Vehicle Health Report may also

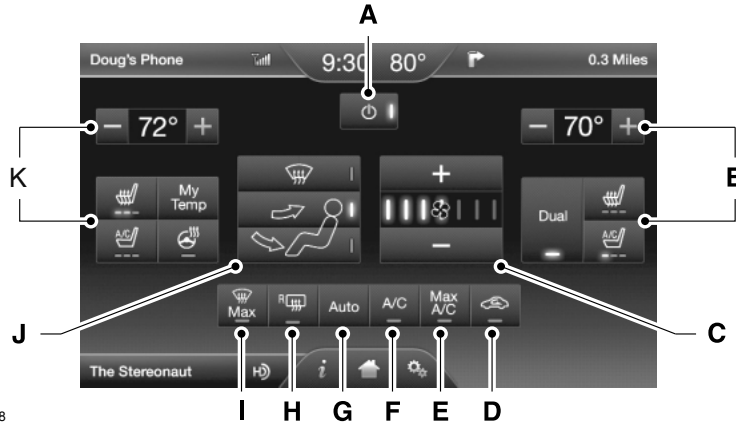
collect more vehicle information. Ford may use your vehicle information it collects for any purpose. If you do not want to disclose your cellular phone number or vehicle information, do not run the feature or set up your Vehicle Health Report profile at www.SYNCMYRide.com. See www.SYNCMYRide.com (Vehicle Health Report Terms and Conditions, and Privacy Statement) for more information.

CLIMATE

Note: You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius in the settings menu. See **Settings** (page 365).

Press the lower right corner on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from the screen shown here.

MyLincoln Touch™



E171848

- A **Power:** Touch to switch the system off and on. When the system is off, outside air cannot enter your vehicle.
- B **Passenger settings:** Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may have the following features: Touch **DUAL** to switch on or off the ability to control the passenger side temperature separately. When switched off, the passenger side temperature always agrees with the driver's temperature setting. Touch the + and - to adjust the temperature. Touch the heated seat icon to control the heated seat (if equipped). Touch the cooled seat icon to control the cooled seat (if equipped). See **Seats** (page 141).
- C **Fan speed:** Touch + or - to increase or decrease the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. All fan indicators turn off whenever the fan speed is automatically controlled.

- D **Recirculated air:** Touch the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the button illuminates and the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with A/C) and may reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle. Recirculated air may turn off automatically (or be prevented from turning on) in all airflow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the possibility of fogging.
- E **MAX A/C:** Touch to switch on. The system distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel air vents, the air conditioning automatically turns on, the driver and passenger temperatures are set to LO and the fan speed adjusts to the highest speed. This re-cooling of the interior is more economical and efficient than normal A/C.
- F **A/C:** Touch to switch air conditioning on or off. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. In certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor may still operate even though the A/C button is off.
- G **AUTO:** Touch to switch on fully automatic operation. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system automatically adjusts fan speed, air distribution, A/C operation, and outside or recirculated air, to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the selected temperature.
- H **Rear defrost:** Touch to switch the rear window defroster and heated mirrors (if equipped) on or off.
- I **MAX defrost:** Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. With the driver and passenger temperatures set to HI, outside air distributes through the windshield vents, the air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. The heated rear window automatically turns on when you switch on MAX defrost and you will be unable to select recirculated air (to prevent fogging).

MyLincoln Touch™

- J **Manual airflow distribution controls:** Press these buttons to switch airflow on or off to the windshield, instrument panel or floor vents. The system can distribute air thru any combination of these vents. The indicators for all of these buttons turn off whenever the air distribution is automatically controlled
- K **Driver settings:** Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may have the following features: Touch the + and - to adjust the temperature. Touch the heated seat icon to control the heated seat (if equipped). Touch the cooled seat icon to control the cooled seat (if equipped). See **Seats** (page 141). Touch **MyTemp** to select your previously pre-set temperature setpoint. Touch and hold **MyTemp** to store a new pre-set for temperature setpoint. Touch the heated steering wheel icon (if equipped) to warm the steering wheel.

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with a wood-trimmed steering wheel, it does not heat between the 10 o'clock and 2 o'clock positions.*

Climate Control Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

Climate control commands
"Climate automatic"
"Climate my temperature"
"Climate off"

Climate control commands
"Climate on"
"Climate temperature <15.5-29.5> degrees"
"Climate temperature <60-85> degrees"
"Help"

There are additional climate control commands but in order to access them, you have to say "Climate" first. When the system is ready to listen, you may say any of the following commands:

"CLIMATE"
"A/C off"
"A/C on"
"Automatic"
"Defrost off"
"Defrost on"
"Dual off"
"Floor on"
"Fan decrease"
"Fan increase"
"MAX A/C off"

"CLIMATE"
"MAX A/C on"
"My temp"
"Off"
"On"
"Panel floor on"
"Panel on"
"Rear defrost off"
"Rear defrost on"
"Recirc off"
"Recirc on"
"Temperature"
"Temperature <15.5-29.5> degrees"
"Temperature <60-85> degrees"
"Temperature decrease"
"Temperature high"

"CLIMATE"
"Temperature increase"
"Temperature low"
"Help"

If you say "Temperature", you can then say any of the commands in the following chart.

"TEMPERATURE"
"<15.5-29.5> degrees"
"<60-85> degrees"
"High"
"Low"
"Help"

NAVIGATION (If Equipped)

Note: The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, see an authorized dealer.

Note: The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, just push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to pull the card out to remove it; this could cause damage.

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

To set a destination, press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the **Dest** button when it appears. See **Setting a destination** later in this chapter.

To view the navigation map and your vehicle's current location, touch the green bar in the upper right-hand corner of the touchscreen, or, press **Dest**, then **Map**. See **Map mode** later in this chapter.

Setting a Destination

Press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the **Dest** button when it appears. Choose any of the following:

Destination
My Home
Favorites
Previous Destinations
Point of Interest
Emergency
Street Address
Intersection
City Center
Map
Edit Route Cancel Route

1. Enter the necessary information into the highlighted text fields (in any order). For address destination entry, the **Go!** button appears once you enter all the necessary information. Pressing the **Go!** button makes the address location appear on the map. If you choose **Previous Destination**, the last 20 destinations you have selected appear.
2. Select **Set as Dest** to make this your destination. You can also choose to set this as a waypoint (have the system route to this point on the way to your current destination) or save it as a favorite. The system considers any **Avoid Areas** selections in its route calculation.
3. Choose from up to three different types of routes, and then select **Start Route**.
 - Fastest: Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
 - Shortest: Uses the shortest distance possible.
 - Eco Route: Uses the most fuel-efficient route.

You can cancel the route or have the system demo the route for you. Select **Route Prefs** to set route preferences like avoiding freeways, tollroads, ferries and car trains as well as to use or not use high-occupancy vehicle lanes. (High-occupancy vehicle lanes are also known as carpool or diamond lanes. People who ride in buses, vanpools or carpools use these lanes.)

Note: *If your vehicle is on a recognized road and you do not press the **Start Route** button, the system defaults to the Fastest Route option and begins guidance.*

During route guidance, you can press the talking bubble icon that appears in the upper right navigation corner (green bar) if you want the system to repeat route guidance information. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects when the vehicle is moving.

Point of Interest (POI) Categories

Main categories
Food/Drink & Dining
Travel & Transportation
Financial
Emergency
Community
Health & Medicine
Automotive
Shopping
Entertainment & Arts
Recreation & Sports
Government
Domestic Services

Subcategories
Restaurant
Golf
Parking
Home & Garden
Personal Care Services
Auto Dealership
Govt Office
Public Transit
Education

To expand these listings, press the + in front of the listing.

The system also allows you to sort alphabetically, by distance or by cityseekr listings (if available).

cityseekr

Note: *cityseekr* point of interest (POI) information is limited to approximately 912 cities (881 in the United States, 20 in Canada and 11 in Mexico).



E142634

cityseekr, when available, is a service that provides more information about certain points of interest such as restaurants, hotels and attractions.

When you have selected a point of interest, the location and information appear, such as address and phone number. If cityseekr lists the point of interest, more information is available, such as a brief description, check-in and checkout times or restaurant hours.

Press **More Information** for a longer review, a list of services and facilities, the average room or meal price as well as the website. This screen displays the point of interest icon such as:



Hotel



Coffeehouse



Food & Drink



Nightlife



Attraction



This icon appears when your selection exists in multiple categories within the system.

When you are viewing more information for hotels, cityseekr also tells you if the hotel has certain services and facilities using icons, such as:

- Restaurant.
- Business center.
- Handicap facilities.
- Laundry.
- Refrigerator.
- 24 hour room service.
- Fitness center.
- Internet access.
- Pool.
- Wi-fi.

For restaurants, cityseekr can provide information such as star rating, average cost, review, handicap access, hours of operation, and website address.

For hotels, cityseekr can provide information such as star rating, price category, review, check-in and checkout times, hotel service icons and website address.

Setting Your Navigation Preferences

Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.



Press the Settings icon > **Settings** > **Navigation**.

Map Preferences

Breadcrumbs

Display your vehicle's previously traveled route with white dots. Switch this feature **ON** or **OFF**.

Turn List Format

Have the system display your turn list **Top to Bottom** or **Bottom to Top**.

Parking POI Notification

Set the automatic parking point of interest notification. Switch this feature **ON** or **OFF**. When parking point of interest notification is on, the icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map when other points of interest display.

Route Preferences

Preferred Route

Choose to have the system display the Shortest, Fastest or most Ecological route first. If you set **Always Use Preferred Route** to **Yes**, the system uses the selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.

Always Use Preferred Route

Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on preferred route setting.

Eco Time Penalty

Select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.

Avoid

These features allow you to choose to have the system avoid freeways, toll roads, ferries and car trains when planning your route. Switch these features **ON** or **OFF**.

Use HOV Lanes

Have the system use high-occupancy vehicle lanes, if available, when planning your route.

Navigation Preferences

Guidance Prompts

Have the system use **Voice & Tones** or **Tone Only** on your programmed route.

Auto - Fill State/Province

Have the system automatically fill in the state and province based on the information already entered into the system. Switch this feature **ON** or **OFF**.

Traffic Preferences

Avoid Traffic Problems

Choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route.

- **Automatic:** Have the system reroute you to avoid traffic incidents that develop and impact the current route. The system does not provide a traffic alert notification.
- **Manual:** Have the system always provide a traffic alert notification for traffic incidents along the planned route. You have a choice to accept or ignore the notification before making the route deviation.

Traffic Alert Notification

Have the system display traffic alert notifications.

Other traffic alert features allows you to turn on certain, or all, traffic icons on the map such as road work, incident, accidents and closed roads. Scroll down to view all the different types of alerts. Switch these features **ON** or **OFF**.

Avoid Areas

Choose areas which you want the system to avoid when calculating a route for you.

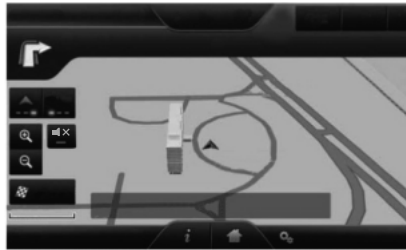
Press **Add** to program an entry. Once you make a selection, the system tries to avoid the area(s) if possible for all routes. To delete a selection, choose the listing on the screen. When the screen changes to **Avoid Areas Edit**, you can press **Delete** at the bottom right of the screen.

Map Mode

Press the green bar in the upper right area of the touchscreen to view map mode. Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of both 2D city maps as well as 3D landmarks (when available).

2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use and land elements and detailed railway infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe. These maps also contain features, such as town blocks, building footprints and railways.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourist value. The 3D landmarks appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage varies and improves with updated map releases.



E174016

Change the appearance of the map display by repeatedly pressing the arrow button in the upper left corner of the screen. It toggles between three different map modes: Heading up, North up and 3D.



Heading up (2D map) always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 2.5 miles (4 kilometers). The system remembers this setting for larger map scales, but shows the map in North up only. If the scale returns below this level, the system restores Heading up.



North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. This viewing angle can be adjusted and the map can be rotated 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.

View switches between full map, street list and exit view in route guidance.

Menu displays a pop-up box that allows direct access to navigation settings, View/Edit Route, SIRIUS Travel Link, Guidance Mute and Cancel Route.



Press the speaker button on the map to mute route guidance. When the light on the button illuminates, the feature is on. The speaker button appears on the map only when route guidance is active.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

Auto Zoom

Press the green bar to access map mode, then select the + or - zoom button to bring up the zoom level and Auto buttons on the touchscreen. When you press **Auto**, Auto Zoom turns on and **Auto** displays in the bottom left corner of the screen in the map scale. The map zoom level then synchronizes with vehicle speed. The slower your vehicle is traveling, the farther in the map zooms in; the faster your vehicle is traveling, the farther the map zooms out. To switch off the feature, just press the + or - button again.

In 3D mode, rotate the map view by swiping your finger across the shaded bar with the arrows.

The ETA box under the zoom buttons appears when a route is active and displays the distance and time to your destination. If the button is pressed, a pop up appears with the destination listed (and waypoint if applicable) along with mileage and time to destination. You may also select to have either the estimated time to reach your destination or your estimated arrival time.

Map Icons



Vehicle mark shows the current location of your vehicle. It stays in the center of the map display, except when in scroll mode.



Scroll cursor allows you to scroll the map; the fixed icon is in the center of the screen. The map position closest to the cursor is in a window on the top center part of the screen.



Address book entry default icon(s) indicates the location on the map of an address book entry. This is the default symbol shown after the entry has been stored to the Address Book by any method other than the map. You can select from any of the 22 icons available. You can use each icon more than once.



Home indicates the location on the map currently stored as the home position. You can only save one address from the Address Book as your Home entry. You cannot change this icon.



POI (Point Of Interest) icons indicate locations of any point of interest categories you choose to display on the map. You can choose to display three point of interest categories on the map at one time.



Starting point indicates the starting point of a planned route.



Waypoint indicates the location of a waypoint on the map. The number inside the circle is different for each waypoint and represents the position of the waypoint in the route list.



Destination symbol indicates the ending point of a planned route.



Next maneuver point indicates the location of the next turn on the planned route.



No GPS symbol indicates that insufficient GPS satellite signals are available for accurate map positioning. This icon may display under normal operation in an area with poor GPS access.

Quick-touch Buttons

When in map mode, touch anywhere on the map display to access the following options:

Set as Dest

Touch this button to select a scrolled location on the map as your destination. You may scroll the map by pressing your index finger on the map display. When you reach the desired location, simply let go and then touch **Set as Dest**.

Set as Waypoint

Touch this button to set the current location as a waypoint.

Save to Favorites

Touch this button to save the current location to your favorites.

POI Icons

Touch this button to select icons to display on the map. You can select up to three icons to display on the map at the same time. Turn these **ON** or **OFF**.

Cancel Route

Touch this button to cancel the active route.

View/Edit Route

Access these features when a route is active:

- View Route
- Edit Destination/Waypoints
- Edit Turn List
- Detour
- Edit Route Preferences
- Edit Traffic Preferences
- Cancel Route.

Nokia is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to Nokia by going to <http://mapreporter.navteq.com>. Nokia evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership, by calling 1-866-4NAVTEQ (1-866-462-8837) (in Mexico, call 01-800-557-5539) or going to www.navigation.com/sync. You need to specify the make and model of your vehicle to determine if there is an update available.

Navigation Voice Commands



When in navigation mode, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. After the tone, say any of the following commands:

Navigation system voice commands
"Cancel next waypoint" ¹
"Cancel route" ¹
"Destination" ²
"Destination <nametag>"
"Destination <POI category>"

Navigation system voice commands
"Destination favorites"
"Destination home"
"Destination intersection"
"Destination nearest <POI category>"
"Destination nearest POI"
"Destination play nametags"
"Destination POI"
"Destination POI category"
"Destination previous destination"
"Destination street address"
"Detour" ¹
"Navigation" ³
"Navigation voice volume decrease"
"Navigation voice volume increase"
"Repeat instruction" ¹

Navigation system voice commands
"Show 3D"
"Show heading up"
"Show map"
"Show north up"
"Show route" ¹
"Show turn list" ¹
"Voice guidance off"
"Voice guidance on"
"Where am I?"
"Zoom in"

Navigation system voice commands
"Zoom out"
"Help"

¹ These commands are only available when a navigation route is active.

² If you say "Destination", you can then say any command in the following "Destination" chart.

³ If you say "Navigation", you can then say any command in the following "Navigation" chart.

"DESTINATION"
"<nametag>"
"<POI category>"
"Favorites"
"Home"
"Intersection"
"Nearest <POI category>"

"DESTINATION"
"Nearest POI"
"Play nametags"
"POI category"
"Previous destination"
"Street address"
"Help"

"NAVIGATION"
"Destination"
"Zoom city"
"Zoom country"
"Zoom minimum"
"Zoom maximum"
"Zoom province"
"Zoom state"
"Zoom street"

"NAVIGATION"
"Zoom to <distance>"
"Help"

If you say "Destination", you can then say any command in the "Destination" chart.

One-shot Destination Street Address

When you say either "Navigation destination street address" or "Destination street address", the system asks you to say the full address. The system displays an example on-screen. You can then speak the address naturally, such as "One two three four Main Street, Anytown".

Accessories

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact an authorized dealer or visit our online store at www.Accessories.Lincoln.com (United States only).

Lincoln Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Lincoln Genuine Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

Lincoln Motor Company will warrant your accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Exterior style

- Side-window deflectors.
- Splash guards.

Interior style

- All-weather floor mats.
- Rear seat entertainment*.
- Premium carpeted floor mats.

Lifestyle

- Ash cup (smoker's packages).
- Cargo area protector.
- Cargo net.
- Cargo organizer.
- Luggage cover.
- Recovery hook (towing eye).
- Roof racks and carriers*.
- Trailer hitch.
- Trailer hitch accessories.

Peace of mind

- Car cover*.
- Wheel locks.
- Locking fuel plug for capless fuel system.

*The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Lincoln Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Lincoln Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Lincoln dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details and request a copy of the Lincoln Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

Accessories

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle:

- Do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of radio transmitter-equipped mobile communications systems, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment should comply with the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations, and an authorized dealer should install this equipment.
- An authorized dealer should install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particular if their manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized dealer add any non-Lincoln electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

Appendices

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed

materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

Appendices

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media

Appendices

and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may

include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

Appendices

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Appendices

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying

printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

Appendices

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the

documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. \$250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player][Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

End User Notice

Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information

This system Ford SYNC contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

Appendices

Read and follow instructions: Before using your Windows Automotive-based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

Keep User's Guide in vehicle: When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

WARNING



Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

General Operation

Voice Command Control: Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

Prolonged Views of Screen: Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

Volume Setting: Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

Use of Speech Recognition Functions: Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

Appendices

Navigation Features: Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Distraction Hazard: Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Let Your Judgment Prevail: Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

Route Safety: Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

Potential Map Inaccuracy: Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

Emergency Services: Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the Telenav Software. Your use of the Telenav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the Telenav Software.

These terms and conditions represent the agreement (“Agreement”) between you and Telenav, Inc. (“Telenav”) with respect to the Telenav Software (including upgrades, modifications, or additions thereto) (collectively “Telenav Software”). All references herein to “you” and “your” means you, your employees, agents, and contractors, and any other entity on whose behalf you accept these terms and conditions, all of whom shall also be bound by this Agreement. Additionally, all of your

Appendices

account information, as well as other payment and personal information provided by you to Telenav (directly or through the use of the Telenav Software, is subject to Telenav's privacy policy located at <http://www.telenav.com>.

Telenav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the Telenav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the Telenav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the Telenav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you

consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the Telenav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the Telenav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the Telenav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold Telenav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the Telenav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the Telenav Software, to provide Telenav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform Telenav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, Telenav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the Telenav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the Telenav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the Telenav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

Appendices

3.1 License Limitations

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the Telenav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the Telenav Software without the prior express written consent of Telenav; (c) remove from the Telenav Software, or alter, any of Telenav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the Telenav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software; or (e) use the Telenav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening,

abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the Telenav Software without advanced written permission of Telenav.

4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will Telenav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the Telenav Software. Telenav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the Telenav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the Telenav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the Telenav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or

survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the Telenav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

Appendices

5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL

BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the Telenav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both Telenav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the Telenav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to Telenav, in which case you

Appendices

and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the Telenav Software.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, Telenav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between Telenav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, Telenav retains all right, title and interest in and to the Telenav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are

intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and Telenav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the Telenav Software, you consent to receive from Telenav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the Telenav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. Telenav may provide such Notices by posting them on Telenav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the Telenav Software.

8.4

Telenav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

Appendices

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words “include” and “including,” and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words “without limitation.”

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav’s third party vendor licensors:

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav (“Telenav”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen’s Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 20xx. All rights reserved.

Appendices

Permitted Use.

You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions.

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication

with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning.

The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty.

This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to,

content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty:

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability:

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR

Appendices

DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENNAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control.

You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules

and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement.

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users.

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in

Appendices

accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West
Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

Appendices

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permis-

sion from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided

under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or

Appendices

action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of

the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory Notice

Appendices

Ecuador “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011”
“source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”

Guadeloupe,
French
Guiana
and
Martinique
Mexico

“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country Notice

Jordan “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications”

shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

Appendices

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from

Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria "© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"

Croatia
Cyprus,
Estonia,
Latvia,
Lithuania, "© EuroGeographics"

Appendices

Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine		Italy	“La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”	license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.
France	“source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”	Norway	“Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”	
Germany	“Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”	Portugal	“Source: IgeoE – Portugal”	VI. Australia Territory
Great Britain	“Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”	Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”	A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:
Greece	“Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”	Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”	Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psm.com.au).
Hungary	“Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”	Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.	
			E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The	

Appendices

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not

remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer

devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty

Appendices

is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER

NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Appendices

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6.240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third

Appendices

party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE

ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

Vehicle with SYNC only

Appendices

United States and Mexico

FCC ID: KMHSG1G1

IC: 1422A-SG1G1

Mexico

Model: KMHSG1P1

NOM-121-SCT1-2009

The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vehicle with SYNC with Touchscreen/My Touch

FCC ID: KMHSYNG2

IC: 1422A-SYNG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Extended Service Plan (ESP)

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH A LINCOLN EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

SERVICE PLANS (U.S. Only)

Lincoln owners have discovered the powerful protection of Lincoln Extended Service Plan. It is the only extended service plan backed by Lincoln Motor Company, and provides peace of mind protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

Lincoln ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Lincoln Extended Service Plan. With Lincoln ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

Up to 1000+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1000 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what's not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Lincoln Extended Service Plan is honored by all authorized Lincoln and Ford dealers in the U.S. and Canada. It is the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Lincoln Motor Company.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Lincoln or Ford dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

Rental Car Reimbursement

1st day Rental Benefit

You take advantage of replacement transportation if your vehicle is at your authorized dealer for same day covered repairs.

Extended Rental Benefits

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including bumper to bumper warranty repairs, and Field Service Actions.

Roadside Assistance

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

Extended Service Plan (ESP)

Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Lincoln Extended Service Plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you sell your vehicle, prospective buyers may have a higher degree of confidence that vehicle was properly maintained with Lincoln ESP, thereby improving resale value.

Avoid the Rising Cost of Properly Maintaining Your Vehicle!

Lincoln Extended Service Plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and select items that routinely wear out. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of select items that require periodic attention for normal wear:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs (except in California).
- The clutch disc.

- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Belts and hoses.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment.

Interest Free Finance Options Available

Take advantage of our interest free installment payment plan. Just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Lincoln ESP has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit checks, no hassles! To learn more, call our Lincoln ESP specialists at 800-367-3377.

Complete the information below and mail to:

Ford ESP
P.O. Box 8072
Royal Oak, MI 48068-0039

SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Lincoln Extended Service Plan. Lincoln Extended Service Plan is the only service contract backed by Lincoln Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Lincoln Extended Service Plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

Extended Service Plan (ESP)

There are several Lincoln Extended Service Plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Lincoln Extended Service Plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada and the United States, provided by a network of participating authorized Lincoln Motor Company dealers.

Note: *Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Lincoln Extended Service Plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. For more information, visit your local Lincoln of Canada dealer or www.Lincoln.ca to find the Lincoln Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

Scheduled Maintenance

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 338).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

Note: *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Scheduled Maintenance

Your vehicle is equipped with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, which displays a message in the information display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers).

When the oil change message appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the message appearing. Make sure you reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change. See **Oil Change Indicator Reset** (page 285).

If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5000 miles (8000 kilometers) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between oil change intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the Ford Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Scheduled Maintenance

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance.

It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

Check every month
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.

Check every six months
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.

Scheduled Maintenance

Check every six months
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

Multi-Point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-Point inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage

Scheduled Maintenance

Multi-Point inspection	
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels ; fill if necessary	Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure **
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Half-shaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer

** If your vehicle is equipped with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor®

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.

This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule. Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying **ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE** or **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** in the information display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

Scheduled Maintenance

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message

Interval	Vehicle use and example
7500-10000 miles (12000-16000 km)	Normal
	Normal commuting with highway driving No, or moderate, load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5000-7499 miles (8000-11999 km)	Severe
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions Extended idling Extended hot or cold operation
3000-4999 miles (5000-7999 km)	Extreme
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation

Scheduled Maintenance

Maintenance Intervals

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display
Change engine oil and filter.
Rotate the tires.
Perform a multi-point inspection (recommended).
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level. Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect the rear axle and U-joints. Lubricate any areas with grease fittings (All-wheel drive vehicles).
Inspect the half-shaft boots.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tire-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints. Lubricate any areas with grease fittings (All-wheel drive vehicles).

Scheduled Maintenance

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display¹

Inspect the tires, tire wear and measure the tread depth.

Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between service intervals.

Reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 284).

Other maintenance items¹

Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant. ²
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s). ³

Scheduled Maintenance

Other maintenance items ¹	
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt(s). ⁴

¹ Perform these maintenance items within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

² Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

³ After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

⁴ If not replaced within the last 100000 miles (160000 kilometers).

SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Scheduled Maintenance

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message appearing in the information display.

- **Example 1:** The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message comes on at 28751 miles (46270 kilometers). Perform the 30000-mile (48000-kilometer) automatic transmission fluid replacement.

- **Example 2:** The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message has **not** come on, but the odometer reads 30000 miles (48000 kilometers) (for example, the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor was reset at 25000 miles [40000 kilometers]). Perform the engine air filter replacement.

Towing a trailer or using a car-top carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect and lubricate U-joints.
	See axle maintenance items under Exceptions .
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

Scheduled Maintenance

Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use (such as delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

This is an optional feature.

Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.

Scheduled Maintenance

Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)	
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.**
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.

* This is an optional feature.

** Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 284).

Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

Axle Maintenance

Change the axle fluid anytime an axle is submerged in water.

California Fuel Filter Replacement

If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals

Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 3000 miles (5000 kilometers).

If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 1800 miles (3000 kilometers).

Scheduled Maintenance

Engine Air Filter and Cabin Air Filter Replacement

The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and

dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

Scheduled Maintenance

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<p>Dealer stamp</p>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

Index

A

A/C

See: Climate Control.....135

About This Manual.....7

Protecting the Environment.....7

ABS

See: Brakes.....182

ABS driving hints

See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock

Brakes.....182

Accessories.....430

Exterior style.....430

Interior style.....430

Lifestyle.....430

Peace of mind.....430

Accessories

See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....12

ACC

See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....204

Active Park Assist.....193

Automatic Steering into a Parking
Space.....195

Automatic Steering out of a Parking
Space.....197

Deactivating the Park Assist Feature.....196

Deactivating the Park Out Assist
Feature.....197

Park Out Assist196

Troubleshooting the System.....198

Using Active Park Assist.....194

Using Park Out Assist.....197

Adjusting the Headlamps.....293

Horizontal Aim Adjustment.....294

Vertical Aim Adjustment.....293

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....81

Power Tilt and Telescope Steering
Column.....81

Airbag Disposal.....56

Air Conditioning

See: Climate Control.....135

Alarm

See: Anti-Theft Alarm.....80

All-Wheel Drive.....177

Ambient Lighting.....95

Anti-Theft Alarm.....80

Arming the Alarm.....80

Disarming the Alarm.....80

Appendices.....432

At a Glance.....15

Front Exterior Overview.....15

Instrument Panel Overview.....19

Rear Exterior Overview.....21

Vehicle Interior Overview.....17

Audible Warnings and Indicators.....110

Headlamps On Warning Chime.....110

Keyless Warning Alert.....110

Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....110

Audio Control.....82

Seek, Next or Previous.....82

Audio System.....347

General Information.....347

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/

FM/CD.....348

Autolamps.....90

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps.....90

Automatic Climate Control.....135

Automatic High Beam Control.....92

Activating the System.....93

Manually Overriding the System.....93

Index

Automatic Transmission.....	171	Brakes.....	182	Changing a Fuse.....	278
Automatic Transmission Adaptive		General Information.....	182	Fuses.....	278
Learning.....	175	Breaking-In.....	246	Changing a Road Wheel.....	330
Brake-Shift Interlock Override.....	174	Bulb Specification Chart.....	296	Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly	
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or		C		Information.....	331
Snow.....	175	Cabin Air Filter.....	139	Tire Change Procedure.....	332
Push Button Shift Transmission.....	171	California Proposition 65.....	11	Changing the 12V Battery.....	290
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission.....	173	Capacities and Specifications.....	338	Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	298
Automatic Transmission Fluid		Technical Specifications.....	343	Changing the Wiper Blades.....	292
Check.....	289	Car Wash		Checking MyKey System Status.....	65
Autowipers.....	86	See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	300	Checking the Wiper Blades.....	292
Auxiliary Power Points.....	155	Center Console.....	157	Child Restraint and Safety Belt	
110 Volt AC Power Point.....	155	Changing a Bulb.....	294	Maintenance.....	44
12 Volt DC Power Point.....	155	Lamp Assembly Condensation.....	294	Child Safety.....	23
Locations.....	155	Replacing Approach Lamp Bulbs.....	295	General Information.....	23
AWD		Replacing Front Indicator Bulbs.....	295	Child Safety Locks.....	35
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	177	Replacing High Intensity Discharge Headlamp		Left-Hand Side.....	36
B		Bulbs.....	295	Right-Hand Side.....	36
Blind Spot Information System.....	218	Replacing High-Mount Brake Lamp		Child Seat Positioning.....	33
Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with		Bulb.....	296	Cleaning Leather Seats.....	306
Cross Traffic Alert.....	218	Replacing License Plate Lamp Bulb.....	296	Cleaning Products.....	300
Bonnet Lock		Replacing Reverse Lamp Assembly.....	295	Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	306
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	279	Replacing Signal Indicator Mirror Bulbs.....	295	Cleaning the Engine.....	302
Booster Seats.....	31	Replacing Tail, Brake and Direction Indicator		Cleaning the Exterior.....	300
Types of Booster Seats.....	31	Bulbs.....	295	Exterior Chrome Parts.....	301
Brake Fluid Check.....	289			Exterior Plastic Parts.....	301
				Stripes or Graphics.....	301
				Underbody.....	301

Index

Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....	305
Cleaning the Interior.....	302
Cleaning Black Label Interior (If Equipped).....	303
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....	302
Clearing All MyKeys.....	63
Climate.....	416
Climate Control Voice Commands.....	419
Climate Control.....	135
Climate Controlled Seats.....	148
Cooled Seats.....	149
Collision Warning System.....	224
Principle Of Operation.....	224
Coolant Check	
See: Engine Coolant Check.....	285
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	55
Creating a MyKey.....	63
Programming/Changing Configurable Settings.....	63
Cruise Control.....	83
Principle of Operation.....	203
Type 1.....	83
Type 2.....	83
Cruise control	
See: Using Cruise Control.....	203
Customer Assistance.....	255

D

Data Recording.....	9
Event Data Recording.....	10
Service Data Recording.....	9
Daytime Running Lamps.....	91
Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable).....	91
Type 2 - Configurable.....	92
Direction Indicators.....	93
Drive Control.....	227
LINCOLN DRIVE CONTROL.....	227
Driver Alert.....	212
Using Driver Alert.....	212
Driver and Passenger Airbags.....	48
Children and Airbags.....	49
Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment.....	49
Driver Knee Airbag.....	53
Driving Aids.....	212
Driving Hints.....	246
Driving Through Water.....	247
DRL	
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	91

E

Economical Driving.....	246
-------------------------	-----

Electric Parking Brake.....	183
Applying the electric parking brake.....	183
Applying the electric parking brake when the vehicle is moving.....	184
Battery With No Charge.....	185
Releasing the electric parking brake.....	184
Emission Control System.....	168
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....	169
Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing.....	170
End User License Agreement.....	432
SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA).....	432
Engine Block Heater.....	161
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	162
Engine Coolant Check.....	285
Adding Engine Coolant.....	286
Checking the Engine Coolant.....	285
Recycled Engine Coolant.....	287
Severe Climates.....	287
What You Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling.....	287
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	79
Engine Oil Check.....	284
Adding Engine Oil.....	285
Engine Oil Dipstick.....	284

Index

Engine Specifications.....	338	Extended Service Plan (ESP).....	458	Fuel Quality.....	164
Drivebelt Routing.....	338	SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY).....	459	Choosing the Right Fuel.....	164
Entertainment.....	378	SERVICE PLANS (U.S. Only).....	458	Octane Recommendations.....	164
AM/FM Radio.....	380	Exterior Mirrors.....	98	Fuel Shutoff.....	250
Bluetooth Audio.....	396	Auto-Dimming Feature.....	99	Fuses.....	262
Browsing Device Content.....	379	Blind Spot Monitor.....	100	Fuse Specification Chart.....	262
CD.....	391	Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	98	Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	269
Line In (Auxiliary Input Jack).....	396	Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	99	Power Distribution Box.....	262
SD Card Slot and USB Port.....	393	Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors.....	99	Pre-Fuse Box.....	262
Sirius® Satellite Radio (If Activated).....	387	Lincoln Welcome Mat.....	99	Rear Cargo Fuse Box.....	275
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....	396	Memory Mirrors.....	99		
EPB		Power Exterior Mirrors.....	98	G	
See: Electric Parking Brake.....	183			Garage Door Opener	
Essential Towing Checks.....	241	F		See: Universal Garage Door Opener.....	150
Before Towing a Trailer.....	242	Fastening the Safety Belts.....	38	Gauges.....	104
Hitches.....	241	How to Extract Safety Belts in the Rear		Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	106
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC).....	242	Outboard Positions.....	40	Fuel Gauge.....	105
Safety Chains.....	241	Safety Belt Extension Assembly.....	41	Information Display.....	105
Trailer Brakes.....	241	Safety Belt Locking Modes.....	39	General Information on Radio	
Trailer Lamps.....	242	Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....	39	Frequencies.....	57
When Towing a Trailer.....	242	Floor Mats.....	247	Intelligent Access.....	57
Event Data Recording		Front Passenger Sensing System.....	49		
See: Data Recording.....	9	Fuel and Refueling.....	163		
Export Unique Options.....	14	Fuel Consumption.....	167		
		Calculating Fuel Economy.....	168		
		Filling the Tank.....	168		
		Fuel Filter.....	289		

Index

General Maintenance Information.....	461	Heating		Information.....	405
Multi-Point Inspection.....	464	See: Climate Control.....	135	911 Assist.....	413
Owner Checks and Services.....	463	Hill Start Assist.....	185	Alerts.....	412
Protecting Your Investment.....	461	Using Hill Start Assist.....	186	Calendar.....	412
Why Maintain Your Vehicle?.....	461	Hints on Controlling the Interior		Sirius Travel Link.....	410
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your		Climate.....	137	SYNC Services (If Equipped, United States	
Dealership?.....	461	Cooling the Interior Quickly.....	138	Only).....	406
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and		General Hints.....	137	Vehicle Health Report.....	415
Canada.....	258	Heating the Interior Quickly.....	138		
Getting the Services You Need.....	255	Recommended Settings for Cooling	138		
Away From Home.....	255	Recommended Settings for Heating.....	138		
Global Opening and Closing.....	97	Side Window Defogging in Cold			
Closing the Windows.....	97	Weather.....	138		
Opening the Windows.....	97	Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock			
		Brakes.....	182		
H		Hood Lock			
		See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	279		
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	250				
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	91	I			
Head Restraints.....	141	In California (U.S. Only).....	256		
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	143	Information Display Control.....	83		
Heated Seats.....	147	Cluster Display Control Features.....	83		
Front Seats.....	147	Information Displays.....	111		
Rear Heated Seats.....	148	General Information.....	111		
Heated Steering Wheel.....	84				
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	138				
Heated Exterior Mirror.....	139				
Heated Rear Window.....	138				

Index

Information Messages.....	117
Active Park.....	117
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	117
AdvanceTrac™.....	118
Airbag.....	119
Alarm.....	119
All-Wheel Drive.....	120
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	119
Battery and Charging System.....	121
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System.....	122
Collision Warning System.....	122
Doors and Locks.....	123
Driver Alert.....	123
Fuel.....	124
Hill Start Assist.....	124
Keys and Intelligent Access.....	124
Lane Keeping System.....	125
Maintenance.....	126
MyKey.....	127
Park Aid.....	128
Park Brake.....	128
Power Steering.....	129
Remote Start.....	130
Seats.....	130
Starting System.....	130
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	131
Traction Control.....	131

Transmission.....	132
Installing Child Seats.....	25
Child Seats.....	25
Using Lap and Shoulder Belts.....	25
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH).....	28
Using Tether Straps.....	29
Instrument Cluster.....	104
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	91
Interior Lamps.....	94
Front Interior Lamp.....	94
Rear Interior Lamp.....	95
Interior Mirror.....	100
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	101
Introduction.....	7

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	251
Connecting the Jumper Cables.....	252
Jump Starting.....	253
Preparing Your Vehicle.....	251
Removing the Jumper Cables.....	253

K

Keyless Entry.....	76
SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD.....	76
Keyless Starting.....	158
Ignition Modes.....	158
Keys and Remote Controls.....	57

L

Lane Keeping System.....	213
Switching the System On and Off.....	213
Lighting Control.....	89
Headlamp Flasher.....	89
High Beams.....	89
Lighting.....	89
Lincoln Automotive Financial Services.....	12
Load Carriers	
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	229
Load Carrying.....	229
Load Limit.....	230
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer.....	230

Index

Locking and Unlocking.....	67
Activating Intelligent Access	69
Autolock Feature.....	70
Battery Saver.....	71
Illuminated Entry.....	71
Illuminated Exit.....	71
Mechanical Key.....	68
Opening a Rear Door from Inside.....	69
Power Door Locks.....	67
Remote Control.....	67
Smart Unlocks.....	70
Welcome Lighting.....	71
Locks.....	67
Luggage Covers.....	229
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	330

M

Maintenance.....	279
General Information.....	279
Manual Liftgate.....	72
Closing the Liftgate.....	73
Opening the Liftgate.....	72
Media Hub.....	350

Memory Function.....	145
Easy Entry and Exit Feature.....	146
Linking a PreSet Position to your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key.....	146
Saving a PreSet Position.....	145
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	111
Mirrors	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	138
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	96
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	13
Moonroof.....	101
Bounce-Back.....	102
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	102
Power Sunscreen.....	103
Venting the Moonroof.....	102
Motorcraft Parts.....	339
MyKey™.....	62
Principle of Operation.....	62
MyLincoln Touch™.....	352
General Information.....	352

N

Navigation.....	420
cityseekr.....	422
Map Mode.....	425
Navigation Map Updates.....	428
Navigation Voice Commands.....	428
Point of Interest (POI) Categories.....	422
Quick-touch Buttons.....	427
Setting a Destination.....	420
Setting Your Navigation Preferences.....	423
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....	465
Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor®.....	465
Maintenance Intervals.....	467

O

Oil Change Indicator Reset.....	285
Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	284
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	279
Opening the Hood.....	279
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....	260
Obtaining a French Owner's Manual.....	260
Overhead Console.....	157

Index

P

Parking Aid.....	191
Front Sensing System.....	192
Rear Sensing System.....	192
Parking Aids.....	191
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	79
SecuriLock™.....	79
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	79
Perchlorate.....	12
Personal Safety System™.....	46
How Does the Personal Safety System Work?.....	46
Phone.....	398
Making Calls.....	400
Pairing Subsequent Phones.....	400
Pairing Your Phone for the First Time.....	399
Phone Menu Options.....	400
Phone Settings.....	402
Phone Voice Commands.....	403
Receiving Calls.....	400
Text Messaging.....	401
Post-Crash Alert System.....	253
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	67

Power Liftgate.....	73
Obstacle Detection.....	76
Opening and Closing the Liftgate.....	74
Setting the Liftgate Open Height.....	75
Power Seats.....	144
Power Lumbar.....	145
Power Steering Fluid Check.....	289
Power Windows.....	96
Accessory Delay.....	97
Bounce-Back.....	96
One-Touch Down.....	96
One-Touch Up.....	96
Window Lock.....	97

R

Rear Seat Armrest.....	149
Rear Seats.....	146
Folding the Seatback.....	147
Recline Adjustment.....	147
Unfolding the Seatback.....	147
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	229
Cargo Management System.....	229
Rear View Camera.....	199
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	200
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	199

Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	87
Rear Window Washer.....	88
Rear Window Wiper.....	87
Recommended Towing Weights.....	240
Refueling.....	166
Easy Fuel™ Capless Fuel System.....	166
Remote Control.....	58
Car Finder.....	59
Intelligent Access Key.....	58
Remote Start.....	59
Replacing the Battery.....	58
Sounding a Panic Alarm.....	59
Remote Start.....	139
Automatic Settings.....	140
Removing a Headlamp.....	294
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	306
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	12
Collision Repairs.....	12
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....	12
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	13
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	61
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....	261
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....	260

Index

Roadside Assistance.....	249	Scheduled Maintenance Record.....	473	Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	159
Vehicles Sold In Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance.....	250	Scheduled Maintenance.....	461	Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	160
Vehicles Sold In Canada: Using Roadside Assistance.....	250	Seats.....	141	Failure to Start.....	160
Vehicles Sold In the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance.....	249	Security.....	79	Fast Restart.....	159
Vehicles Sold In the United States: Using Roadside Assistance.....	249	Settings.....	365	Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	161
Roadside Emergencies.....	249	Clock.....	366	Important Ventilating Information.....	161
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	229	Display.....	366	Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	161
Running-In		Settings.....	368	Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	160
See: Breaking-In.....	246	Sound.....	367	Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	158
Running Out of Fuel.....	164	Vehicle.....	367	General Information.....	158
Refilling With a Portable Fuel Container.....	165	Side Airbags.....	52	Steering.....	223
S		Sitting in the Correct Position.....	141	Electric Power Steering.....	223
Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	41	Snow Chains		Steering Wheel.....	81
Safety Belt Minder.....	43	See: Using Snow Chains.....	325	Storage Compartments.....	157
Belt-Minder™.....	43	Special Notices.....	13	Sunroof	
Safety Belts.....	37	New Vehicle Limited Warranty.....	13	See: Moonroof.....	101
Principle of Operation.....	37	Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles.....	13	Sun Visors.....	101
Safety Belt Warning Lamp and Indicator		Special Instructions.....	13	Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....	101
Chime.....	42	Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance.....	13	Supplementary Restraints System.....	47
Conditions of operation.....	42	Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow.....	13	Principle of Operation.....	47
Safety Canopy™.....	53	Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....	469	Symbols Glossary.....	7
Safety Precautions.....	163	Exceptions.....	472		
		Speed Control			
		See: Cruise Control.....	203		
		Stability Control.....	189		
		Principle of Operation.....	189		

Index

T

Tailgate	
See: Manual Liftgate.....	72
See: Power Liftgate.....	73
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	338
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....	257
Ticket Holders.....	157
Tire Care.....	312
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	313
Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading.....	312
Information Contained on the Tire	
Sidewall.....	314
Temperature A B C.....	313
Traction AA A B C.....	312
Treadwear.....	312
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	326
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	327
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System	328
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	310
Towing a Trailer.....	239
Load Placement.....	239

Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	244
Emergency Towing.....	244
Recreational Towing.....	244
Towing.....	239
Traction Control.....	187
Principle of Operation.....	187
Trailer Sway Control.....	239
Transmission Code Designation.....	342
Transmission.....	171
Transmission	
See: Transmission.....	171
Transporting the Vehicle.....	243

U

Under Hood Overview - 2.0L	
EcoBoost™	281
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L	
EcoBoost™	283
Universal Garage Door Opener.....	150
HomeLink Wireless Control System.....	150

Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	204
Blocked Sensor.....	209
Changing the Adaptive Cruise Control Set Speed.....	207
Detection Issues.....	208
Disengaging the System.....	207
Following a Vehicle.....	205
Hilly Condition Usage.....	207
Low Speed Automatic Cancellation.....	207
Overriding the System.....	207
Resuming the Set Speed.....	207
Setting a Speed.....	205
Setting the Gap Distance.....	206
Switching the System Off.....	208
Switching the System On.....	204
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....	210
System Not Available.....	209
Using All-Wheel Drive.....	177
Driving in Special Conditions With All-Wheel Drive.....	177
Using Cruise Control.....	203
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	204
Switching Cruise Control On.....	203
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	66
Using Snow Chains.....	325

Index

Using Stability Control.....	190
AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®).....	190
Using Traction Control.....	187
Switching the System Off Using a Switch.....	187
Switching the System Off Using the Information Display Controls.....	187
System Indicator Lights and Messages.....	187
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only).....	258

V

Vehicle Care.....	300
General Information.....	300
Vehicle Certification Label.....	341
Vehicle Identification Number.....	341

Vehicle Storage.....	307
Battery.....	308
Body.....	307
Brakes.....	308
Cooling system.....	308
Engine.....	308
Fuel system.....	308
General.....	307
Miscellaneous.....	308
Removing Vehicle From Storage.....	308
Tires.....	308
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	135
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	341
Voice Control.....	83

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	106
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	106
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	107
Battery.....	107
Blind Spot Monitor.....	107
Brake System.....	107
Cruise Control.....	107
Direction Indicator.....	107
Door Ajar.....	107
Electric Park Brake.....	107
Engine Coolant Temperature.....	108
Engine Oil.....	108
Fasten Safety Belt.....	108
Front Airbag.....	108
Heads Up Display.....	108
High Beam.....	108
Hood Ajar.....	108
Low Fuel Level.....	108
Low Tire Pressure Warning.....	108
Low Washer Fluid.....	109
Parking Lamps.....	109
Powertrain Fault.....	109
Service Engine Soon.....	109
Stability Control.....	109
Stability Control Off.....	110
Washer Fluid Check.....	289

Index

Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	300
See: Wipers and Washers.....	85
Waxing.....	301
Welcome Lighting.....	94
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	330
Wheels and Tires.....	310
General Information.....	310
Technical Specifications.....	336
Windows and Mirrors.....	96
Windshield Washers.....	87
Windshield Wipers.....	85
Intermittent Wipe.....	85
Speed dependent wipers.....	85
Wipers and Washers.....	85

